

新东方学校英语文库

# 英语语法新思维

高级教程——驾驭语法



张满胜 编著

Advanced

世界知识出版社

张满胜 编著

NEW PERSPECTIVE GRAMMAR

# 英语语法新思维

高级教程——驾驭语法

世界知识出版社

**图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据**

英语语法新思维高级教程: 驾驭语法 / 张满胜编著. - 北京: 世界知识出版社, 2002.5

ISBN 7-5012-1716-5

I. 英… II. 张… III. 英语-语法-教材 IV. H314

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2002) 第 021260 号

**责任编辑 / 刘 岩**

**封面设计 / 文 敏**

**责任出版 / 王勇刚**

**责任校对 / 张 娟**

**出版发行 / 世界知识出版社**

**地址电话 / 北京市东城区干面胡同 51 号 (010) 65265933**

**E-mail: gcgjz@public.bta.net.cn**

**邮政编码 / 100010**

**经 销 / 新华书店**

**排 版 / 世界知识出版社电脑科**

**印 刷 / 北京科技印刷厂**

**开本印张 / 850×1168 1/32 14 印张 360 千字**

**版 次 / 2002 年 4 月第一版 2002 年 4 月第一次印刷**

**定 价 / 26.00 元**

**版权所有 翻印必究**

# 新东方丛书策划委员会

总策划 包凡一 胡 敏

委员会 (按姓氏笔划为序)

王 强      王文成

包凡一      杜子华

周成刚      杨 继

胡 敏      俞敏洪

徐小平



★ 语法即是造句规则。学习语法有两个目的：首先，便于我们读懂句子；其次，教会我们造句。

★ 语法不是“死”的造句规则，而是“活”的语言思维。

一般语法书都是只讲“死”的规则，而不去追究规则背后的合乎逻辑的语法思维。致使很多英语学习者花费了大量的时间学英语，学语法，记死规则，最后又很快遗忘，终难修成英语正果。本套书力求不仅告诉你规则“是什么”，而且还要告诉你规则背后的“为什么”。从而达到既掌握规则又培养了英文思维的目的。

★ 《英语语法新思维》“新”在何处？

**新理念：**

笔者提出语法即思维的全新理念，并将这一理念贯穿于整个语法书创作的始终。语言是

人们进行思维的载体，语法作为语言遣词造句的规则，体现了用语者的思维。

**新体系：**

本套书不再像传统语法书那样，以词法和句法两条主线对英语语法进行“大而全”的、包罗万象的规则罗列。本套书注重实用，循序渐进，科学地分为三级。具体思路体系安排如下：

**初级：**以动词和名词作为两大主线，介绍英文主要词类的正确使用，让读者能熟练构造简单句，以及对各种主要词类能够运用自如。

**中级：**以动词和从句作为两大主线，重点是让读者熟练构造复合句，能够分析和读懂复杂的句子，并进而使读者下笔时不再是通篇的简单句，而是开始能较灵活地把握句子的构造。

**高级：**以动词和从句作为两大主线，重点是让读者更深入地比较各种复合句的特点，并掌握复合句与简单句之间的转化。教会读者征服复杂难句，简化复杂从句，做到使句子返璞归真。

**新角度：**

笔者一直力图从全新的角度对传统的语法规则进行阐述，目的是为了**使复杂规则易学易用**。比如，对于“名词从句”，笔者表述思路是：名词从句本质即是把句子当作名词来用。

名词在句中可充当四种成分：主语、宾语、表语和同位语，因此，我们同样可用一个完整句子来充当另一句子的四种成分，于是便有了主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句这四种名词从句。问题关键是：我们可用三种句子（陈述句、一般疑问句和特殊疑问句）来分别充当这四种成分。于是，把传统的介绍繁杂的连词用法转化为三种句子充当四种成分即构成名词从句。

### **新例句：**

规则毕竟是为语言服务的，精炼、明晰的规则披上美丽的语言外衣，使语法学习不再是枯燥乏味的死记硬背，而是妙趣横生、驾轻就熟的语言实践。因此，笔者在例句的选择上真可谓煞费苦心，注重幽默性、知识性、思想性，使读者在欣赏语言之美的同时掌握语言表达规则。

本套书的出版背后凝结了众多人的辛勤劳动。在此，特别感谢北京新东方教育科技有限公司俞敏洪总裁、王强董事长，新东方图书事业部包凡一主任在此书的出版过程中给予的大力支持。特别感谢世界知识出版社王文成主任，责任编辑刘砦、张雅坤在本书的策划、编辑和版式上提出的宝贵建议及付出的辛勤劳动。

本书是笔者在语法领域内研究的初步成果，水平有限，疏漏错误在所难免。读者永远是最终的裁判。我真诚地希望，读者朋友在阅读过程中

若有疑问，或者对此书有任何建议，能够及时与我联系，我的电子信箱：

zhangmansheng@hotmail.com

感谢您选读此书！

张满胜

2002 年 3 月



新东方学校英语语法培训创始人张满胜,从事过多年的英语翻译和教学工作。在长期的英语实践过程中,他突破传统语法教学,提出“语法即是思维”的全新语法理念,使学习语法不再是记“死”规则,而是培养“活”的英语思维。著有《英语语法新思维》一书,该书在2000年《21世纪英语报》全国外文畅销书排行榜中,在语法类书目中名列第二。现推出的这套系列语法专著,包括《英语语法新思维——走近语法》、《英语语法新思维——通悟语法》、《英语语法新思维——驾驭语法》,是他历经十多年潜心研究的力作。



---

<b>第一章 名词从句</b> .....	1
1. 名词从句的本质: 三种句子充当四种成分 .....	1
2. 主语从句 .....	6
3. 宾语从句 .....	9
4. 表语从句 .....	12
5. 同位语从句 .....	13
 <b>第二章 定语从句</b> .....	35
6. 全面理解“先行词” .....	36
7. 关系词 .....	39
8. 常见关系代词 .....	41
9. As 的用法 .....	42
10. What 用法 .....	44
11. Than 作关系代词的用法( 考研常考题) ...	48
12. But 的用法 .....	49
13. When 的用法 .....	50
14. Where 的用法 .....	52

15. Why 的用法 .....	55
16. 根据定语从句中的线索来判断介词 .....	55
17. 根据先行词来判断介词 .....	57
18. 表示所属关系或部分与整体关系时用介 词 of .....	59
19. in which to do 结构 .....	60
20. That 在定语从句与名词从句中 .....	62
21. Which 在定语从句与名词从句中 .....	63
22. 各种复杂的定语从句 .....	64

### 第三章 状语从句 ..... 110

23. 状语从句本质 .....	110
24. 时间状语从句 .....	112
25. 地点状语从句 .....	118
26. 原因状语从句 .....	119
27. 目的状语从句 .....	125
28. 结果状语从句 .....	128
29. so 和 such 的用法区别 .....	131
30. 条件状语从句 .....	133
31. 让步状语从句 .....	136
32. 比较状语从句 .....	143
33. 方式状语从句 .....	153

### 第四章 动词不定式 ..... 185

34. 非谓语动词概述 .....	185
35. 句型一: It + to do sth(作主语) .....	186
36. 句型二: 动词 + to do(作宾语) .....	187
37. 句型三: 动词 + sb to do sth(作宾语补足语) .....	190

38. 句型四:名词 + to do sth(作定语) .....	191
39. 句型五:形容词 + to do sth .....	195
40. 不定式作状语 .....	197
41. 用作独立成分 .....	200
42. 不定式逻辑主语 .....	201
43. 不定式的时态 .....	204
44. 不定式的语态 .....	209
45. 不带 to 的不定式 .....	213
46. 分裂不定式 .....	217

<b>第五章 动名词</b> .....	244
47. 动名词作主语 .....	244
48. 动名词作宾语 .....	247
49. 动名词的复合结构 .....	258
50. 动名词时态语态 .....	262
51. There be 的动名词及不定式形式 .....	264

<b>第六章 分词</b> .....	283
52. 现在分词的意义 .....	284
53. 过去分词的意义 .....	285
54. 三种表示被动的结构(考试重点) .....	287
55. 关于分词短语作状语时的逻辑主语问题 .....	289
56. 分词短语作状语在句中的不同意义 .....	293
57. 带有连词或介词的分词短语 .....	297
58. 分词的完成式 .....	299
59. 现在分词与动名词的区别 .....	302
60. 动名词复合结构与现在分词短语的区别..... .....	305

61. 分词作补足语 .....	307
62. 现在分词构成的复合形容词 .....	309
63. 过去分词构成的复合形容词 .....	312
 <b>第七章 从句的简化</b> .....	<b>354</b>
64. 名词从句的简化 .....	354
65. 定语从句的简化 .....	357
66. 状语从句的简化 .....	359
 <b>第八章 虚拟语气</b> .....	<b>376</b>
67. 非真实条件虚拟句 .....	377
68. 名词从句虚拟句 .....	389
69. 其他虚拟句型 .....	393
 <b>第九章 倒装</b> .....	<b>420</b>
70. 部分倒装 .....	420
71. 全部倒装 .....	425

## 名词从句

### 1. 名词从句的本质：三种句子充当四种成分

各位读者以前均学习过名词从句，但在这里笔者要从一种全新的思维角度去研究名词从句。所谓名词从句，就是把完整句子当作名词来使用，分别在另一个句子中充当某种成分。一般来讲，名词在句中主要充当四种成分：主语、宾语、表语和同位语。同样，我们可以用一个完整的句子当作名词来使用，也在另一个句中充当这四种成分，于是便有了常说的四种名词从句：主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。

**现在问题关键是：我们可以把何种句子当作名词来用呢？**

经研究发现，能够相当于名词作用的句子有三类：陈述句、一般疑问句以及特殊疑问句。

因此，名词从句可简单概括为这样一句话：**名词从句就是用三种句子来分别充当另外一个句子的四种句子成分。**这即构成了名词从句的本质特征。

但是，值得注意的是，这三种句子不是直接放在另一个句子中作成分，而是要做以下调整：

►1. 用陈述句作成分时,需要在陈述句首加 **that** 来引导。

请看例句:

陈述句	名词从句	解释
English is difficult.	<u>That</u> <i>English is difficult</i> is not my idea. (有人认为英语很难,我可 不这么认为。)	陈述句作主语,构成 主语从句。
Love, not time heals all wounds.	I've learned <u>that</u> <i>love, not time heals all wounds</i> . (我明白了,是爱而不是时 间能够治愈一切创伤。)	陈述句作宾语,构成 宾语从句。
The child should be sent to school.	My idea is <u>that</u> <i>the child should be sent to school</i> . (我认为这孩子应该送去 上学。)	陈述句作表语,构成 表语从句。
He succeeded in the experiment.	The fact <u>that</u> <i>he succeeded in the experiment</i> pleased everybody. (他试验取得成功,这让大 家很高兴。)	陈述句用作同位语, 补充说明名词 <i>the fact</i> , 构成同位语从 句。

- 2. 用一般疑问句作成分时,需要先将疑问句的倒装语序换成正常语序,然后在句首加上 *whether* 或 *if* (*if* 只用在宾语从句中)来引导,以保留原句疑问意义。请看例句:

一般疑问句	名词从句	解释
Will he come to my party?	<u>Whether</u> <i>he will come to my party</i> makes no difference to me. (他来不来参加我的聚会对我来说无所谓。)	一般疑问句作主语,构成主语从句。
Does he need my help?	I don't know <u>if/whether</u> <i>he needs my help</i> . (我不知道他是否需要我的帮助。)	一般疑问句作宾语,构成宾语从句。
Will people live on the moon someday?	My question is <u>whether</u> <i>people will live on the moon someday</i> . (我的问题是,人类在未来某一天是否真的能生活在月球上。)	一般疑问句作表语,构成表语从句。
Is there life on other planets?	Scientists have argued over the question <u>whether</u> <i>there is life on other planets</i> . (科学家们一直就是否有外星人这个问题争论不休。)	一般疑问句作同位语,补充说明 question, 构成同位语从句。



- 3. 用特殊疑问句作成分时,只需要将疑问句的倒装语序换成正常的陈述语序。请看例句:

特殊疑问句	名词从句	解释
Why did dinosaurs become extinct? (恐龙为什么会灭绝?)	<i>Why dinosaurs became extinct</i> is still a mystery. (恐龙为什么会灭绝目前还是个未解之谜。)	特殊疑问句作主语,构成主语从句
How many letters are there in the English alphabet? (英文字母表中有多少个字母?)	I don't know <i>how many letters there are in the English alphabet</i> . (我不知道英文字母表中有多少个字母。)	特殊疑问句作宾语,构成宾语从句
What are we badly in need of? (我们目前最需要什么?)	Money is <i>what we are badly in need of</i> . (我们急需的就是钱。)	特殊疑问句作表语,构成表语从句
Where could we get the loan? (我们能去哪里弄到这笔贷款?)	There arose the <i>question where we could get the loan</i> . (现在的问题是我们去哪里弄到这笔贷款。)	特殊疑问句作同位语,补充说明 question,构成同位语从句

最后,需要提醒注意的是:(重点理解下列语法概念!)

1)引导名词从句的常用连词:

名词从句的引导词	对应的句子类型	是否作成分
连词 that	对应于陈述句	that 在从句中不作成分
连词 whether, if	对应于一般疑问句	whether, if 在从句中不作成分
连接副词 when, where, why, how; 连接代词 who, whom, what, which, whose	对应于特殊疑问句	when, where, why, how 在从句中作状语; who, whom, what 在从句中作主语、宾语或表语; which, whose 在从句中作定语,后面接名词连用。

我们要特别关注这些连词是否在句中充当句子成分。比如, that 不能作任何成分,只起连接作用,后边要接陈述句;what 一定充当从句的主语或宾语;which 和 whose 后边都要接名词,等等。这些都是考试重点。

2)同位语从句通常是由 that 引导,而很少用 whether, if 以及连接代词或连接副词引导。这是因为我们多是用陈述句来补充名词的内容,而很少用一般疑问句或特殊疑问句来补充名词的内容。

3)在一个句子当中,可能会含有多个名词从句,这样会使句子变得更复杂,遇到时要仔细分析句子结构。例如:

- a. I realized that *what I said* was not exactly *what I meant to say*. (我后来意识到,当时所说的话并非是我真正想要说的。)在 that 引导的宾语从句中同时含有 what 引导的主语从句和 what 引导的表语从句。
- b. The question is how *what you have learned* can be put into practice. (问题是,你所学到的知识如何才能应用于实践。)在 how 引导的表语从句中含有 what 引导的主语从句。

## 2. 主语从句

### ► 1. that 引导的主语从句句型:

that 引导的主语从句直接放在句首的较少,如:

- a. *That he doesn't understand English* is obvious.
- b. *That the world is round* is a fact.
- c. *That the moon itself does not give off light* is common knowledge. 月球本身不发光这是一个常识。

更常见的是用 it 作形式主语置于句首,而将 that 引导的主语从句放在句末,例如:

- d. It is obvious *that he doesn't understand English*.
- e. It is a fact *that the world is round*.
- f. It is common knowledge *that the moon itself does not give off light*. 月球本身不发光这是一个常识。
- g. It is common knowledge *that the whale is not a fish*.
- h. It is common knowledge *that a flash of lightning is seen before a clap of thunder is heard*.
- i. It is a shame *that you did not pass the test*. 你没通过这次考试真遗憾。

因此,下列都是常见的主语从句句型:(重点内容!)

#### 1) It is + 过去分词 + that 从句:

It's reported that... 据报道...

It's believed that... 人们相信...

It is generally thought that... 人们普遍认为...

It should be noted that... 应当注意...

It has been found that... 现已发现...

It must be pointed out that... 必须指出...

同样可以这么用的动词有: say, expect, know, estimate, forecast 等。

2) It is + 形容词 + that 从句:

It is clear that... 显然...

It is possible that... 很可能...

It is likely that... 很可能...

It is natural that... 很自然...

It is certain that... 可以相信...

It is strange that... 奇怪的是...

It is fortunate that... 幸运的是...

It is necessary that... 有必要...

3) It is + 名词短语 + that 从句: a pity, a shame, an honor, a good idea, no wonder, 等等。

It is a pity that... 可惜的是...

It is a fact that... 事实是...

It is good news that... …真是太好了。

It is a good thing that... …真是件好事。

It is no wonder that... 难怪...

It is a shame that... 遗憾的是...; …真是太不像话了。

It is an honor that... 真荣幸...

It is common knowledge that... …是常识。

It is my belief that... 我相信...

It is a miracle that... …真是奇迹。

4) It + 不及物动词 + that 从句: seem, appear, turn out, come about, 等等。

It seems that... 似乎...

It follows that... 因此...; 由此可见...

It happens that... 碰巧...

It turns out that... 结果证明是...

It comes about that... 结果是...

a. It seems that you know a lot about computer.

b. It turned out that he did not steal her book.

5) 其他结构:

It dawns upon/on sb that... 某人突然想起...

It occurs to sb that... 某人突然想起...

It makes no difference that... ...无所谓。

It doesn't need to be bothered that... 不必担忧...

It is of little consequence that... ...无关紧要。

a. It has never occurred to me that he is a thief. 我从未想到他是小偷。

b. *It dawns upon me that* there is a logical connection between all the things that happen in that immensely connected body of salted water that covers 71 percent of the surface of the earth.

c. It makes no difference whether he will come or not.

►2. whether 及连接代词或连接副词引导主语从句一般放在句首。

a. “*Who Moved My Cheese?*” shows a way out for people trapped by fear of change. 《谁动了我的奶酪?》这本书为那些因害怕改变而深陷困境的人们指明了方向。

b. Several days ago, a Beijing-based IT company fired about 400 people overnight. The act startled the fired employees and at the same time worried the rest. Moreover, *what was special about this case* was that the day before the 400 were fired, they all received from their boss a gift—the book “*Who Moved My Cheese?*”

- c. *What happened on September 11, 2001* will be forever etched (铭刻) in our memory. 9·11 事件将会永远铭刻在人们的脑海里。

### 3. 宾语从句

#### ► 1. 宾语从句的位置:

1) 在及物动词后作宾语:

- a. I've learned that *love, not time heals all wounds*. 我明白了,是爱而不是时间能够治愈一切创伤。  
b. I think that *a sound knowledge of grammar is indispensable to good writing*. 我认为扎实的语法功底对英文写作极为重要。  
c. I don't know *who has been elected president of the committee*.  
d. I think *he is fit for the job*. (that 被省去)  
e. Parents generally buy *whichever books their children want*.  
f. Do you know *when he arrives*?

2) 在双宾语动词后作直接宾语:

- a. Could you tell me *where the post office is*?  
b. I assure you *that I had no intention of offending you*.  
c. Tell us *who has been elected president of the committee*.

3) 在介词后作宾语:

- a. I find the best way to concentrate is to make notes on *what the teachers are saying*. 我认为上课集中注意力的最好办法就是把老师讲的内容认真记下来。  
b. You should vote for *which candidate you assume best*.  
c. There is disagreement among economists about *what mon-*

*ey is and how money is measured*. 关于什么是货币以及怎样计量货币在经济学家们之间存在分歧。

d. That depends on *how hard you work*.

e. We will plug the leaks with *whatever is handy*. 我们可以随便拿个什么东西把漏洞堵上。

4) 在某些形容词后作宾语:

a. I am sure *that we shall succeed*.

b. I am afraid *that I can't come*.

c. She was glad *that he agreed to date her*.

5) 宾语从句后置:

出现在复合宾语结构中:“动词 + *it* 形式宾语 + 宾语补足语 + *that* 宾语从句”。

a. We must make *it clear that the parties involved are to make every effort to curb the pollution*. 我们必须申明有关部门要尽一切努力治理污染。

b. There are those who consider *it questionable that these defence-linked research projects will account for an improvement in the standard of living or, alternately, do much to protect our diminishing resources*. 这些与防御有关的研究项目会不会说明生活水平的提高,或者说会不会有利于保护我们日益减少的资源,对此,有人是持怀疑态度的。

c. We believe *it true that the human body is also a kind of good conductor*. 人体也是一种良导体,我们认为这是对的。

## ► 2. *that* 在宾语从句中省略的问题:

一般来讲,*that* 引导宾语从句时,可将 *that* 省去。但若是几个宾语从句并列使用,则连词 *that* 不可省去,例如:

- a. I once read *that* “The beauty of life is its changes” and *that* “the art of life lies in a constant readjustment to our surroundings.” 我曾经读到过这样一句话：“生活的魅力在于变化，而生活的艺术在于不断适应周围环境的变化。”
- b. For various reasons, many women are emotionally needy, and they sometimes seek sex outside of marriage to confirm *that* they are okay, *that* they are beautiful and desirable, *that* they are sexy, and *that* somebody loves them for the real women they are rather than for their cooking, housecleaning and child-rearing abilities. 出于种种原因，许多女人缺少感情上的抚慰，她们有时候寻找婚外性伙伴以证明自己还不错、挺漂亮、富于魅力并且很性感。她们需要证实男人确实爱她们本人而不是欣赏她们的烹调、理家以及照顾孩子的能力。

### ► 3. if 还是 whether?

1) if 一般只用于引导宾语从句，而 whether 可引导包括宾语从句在内的其他名词从句。

- a. *If* he comes or not makes no difference. (×, 不用 *if* 引导主语从句)
- b. The question is *if* he will come. (×, 不用 *if* 引导表语从句)

2) if 不和 or not 直接连用，即一般不说 if or not。但可以说 if...or not。而 whether 没有此限制。

- a. I don't know *if or not* he comes. (×)
- b. I don't know *whether or not* he comes.
- c. No one knew *whether or not* interest rates would rise.



## 4. 表语从句

► 1. 表语从句通常是置于系动词,尤其是 *is* 后边,例如:

- a. This is *where our basic interest lies*. 这是我们根本利益所在。
- b. Women are much too preoccupied by family. Once the marriage begins to disintegrate, they're lost. That's *where* their unhappiness springs from and that's *why* most divorced mothers regard themselves as victims. 妇女太专注于家庭了。一旦婚姻开始瓦解,她们就失去了方向。这就是她们不快乐的来源,也是为什么大多数离婚妇女认为她们是受害者的原因。
- c. Change is *what* keeps us fresh and innovative. Change is *what* keeps us from getting stale. Change is *what* keeps us young. 惟有变革才能使我们思维敏捷,富有创造性;惟有变革才能防止思想僵化;惟有变革才能让我们永葆青春。
- d. Money is *what* we are badly in need of. 我们急需的是钱。

► 2. 名词 *reason* 后面的表语从句一般用 *that* 引导,而不用 *because*(常见于四、六级或研究生考题中)。例如:

- a. The reason (why) he was dismissed is *that he was careless and irresponsible*.
- b. The reason (why) he was dismissed is *because he was careless and irresponsible*. (×)

## 5. 同位语从句

### ► 1. “名词 + that + 陈述句”句型:

所谓同位语,就是用来补充说明名词的成分,当我们用一个完整的陈述句来补充说明名词时,即构成同位语从句。所以同位语从句都是位于一名词后边,用来进一步说明前面名词的内容,形式上便构成“名词 + that + 陈述句”。(前面提到,英文中绝大多数都是 that 引导同位语从句。)

- a. There is a popular *saying that family instability causes social instability*. 有一种流行的说法,认为家庭的不稳定导致了社会的不稳定。
- b. He was prepared to prove *his theory that two different weights would fall to the ground at the same time*. 他想证明他的这一理论:两个不同重量的物体将同时落地。
- c. *The fact that he succeeded in the experiment* pleased everybody. 他试验取得成功,让大家很高兴。
- d. *The rumor that Tom was a thief* turned out to be untrue.  
有人曾谣传汤姆是小偷,结果证明是不对的。

同位语从句也可由 *whether* 或连词代词、连接副词引导,但较少用到。例如:

- e. Scientists have argued over *the problem whether there is life on other planets*. 科学家们一直就是否有外星人这个问题争论不休。
- f. There arose *the question where we could get the loan*. 现在的问题是我们去哪里弄到这笔贷款。

## ► 2. “名词 + 其他成分 + that + 陈述句”句型:

同位语从句可能与其所修饰的名词被其他成分所隔开,形式上便构成“名词 + 其他成分 + that + 陈述句”。这种被分割开来的情形在阅读文章中是常见的,遇到时一定要认真分析,才能正确理解句子意思。请看例句:

- a. They spread *the lie* everywhere *that Tom was guilty of theft*. 他们到处散布谣言说汤姆犯有盗窃罪。
- b. *A saying* goes *that practice makes perfect*. 俗话说熟能生巧。
- c. Dreary months dragged by before the tragic *news* reached her *that her beloved brother had been killed for anti-Nazi activities*. 在狱中挨过数月苦闷的日子后,突然一天传来噩耗:她敬爱的哥哥在反法西斯活动中被杀害。
- d. *Evidence* came up *that specific speech sounds are recognized by babies as young as 6 months old*. (有证据表明,六个月的婴儿就能辨别出特定的说话声音。注意此处 *that* 引导的从句不是作 *came up* 的宾语,因为 *came up* 是不及物动词词组,而是作 *evidence* 的同位语。)
- e. *The motion* came from the chairman *that the regulations be adopted*. 执行该项规章制度的动议是由董事长提出来的。

此外关于同位语从句与定语从句的区别,详见“定语从句”相关内容。

关于“名词从句中用虚拟语气”的情况,详见“虚拟语气”相关内容。

关于“名词从句的简化”参见“第七章”。

## 第一章 名词从句练习

### 1.1 将括号中的句子变成相应的名词从句

1. There is a popular saying \_\_\_\_\_. (Family instability causes social instability.)
2. No one knows exactly \_\_\_\_\_. (Is there life on other planets?)
3. No one knew \_\_\_\_\_. (Would interest rates rise?)
4. I am interested in the question \_\_\_\_\_. (Will people live on the moon someday?)
5. No one knows for sure \_\_\_\_\_. (Will the gains be greater than the losses?)
6. My question is \_\_\_\_\_. (Do we have enough time to go to the movie?)
7. September 11, 2001 started out as an ordinary day, but \_\_\_\_\_ will be forever etched (铭刻) in our memories. (What happened that morning?)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ is wholly new kind of police force. (What do we need?)
9. Children often ask \_\_\_\_\_. (How do bears survive winter?)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ is true. (What did he tell you?)
11. \_\_\_\_\_ has not yet been decided. (Who will chair the meeting?)
12. \_\_\_\_\_ has not yet been decided. (When is the meeting to be held?)
13. \_\_\_\_\_ is still a mystery. (Why did he refuse to cooper-

ate with us?)

14. \_\_\_\_\_ is more important than what his fate is. (How does a person master his fate?)
15. Could you tell me \_\_\_\_\_? (Where is the post office?)
16. We don't know \_\_\_\_\_. (Why didn't he come yesterday?)
17. This is \_\_\_\_\_. (Where does our basic interest lie?)
18. My question is \_\_\_\_\_. (Where are we going to have our holidays?)

## 1.2 单选题(主语从句)

19. It is obvious \_\_\_\_\_ on more important things.
  - A. which the money should we spend
  - B. what the money should we spend
  - C. that the money should we spend
  - D. that we should spend the money
20. \_\_\_\_\_ hard water does not mix well with soap.
  - A. That is a well-known fact
  - B. That is a well-known fact in which
  - C. It is a well-known fact that
  - D. It is a well-known that
21. \_\_\_\_\_ every magnet is surrounded by a magnetic field.
  - A. It believes that
  - B. It believed that
  - C. It is believed that
  - D. It's believing that
22. \_\_\_\_\_ was to return to school.
  - A. That really interested him
  - B. What really interested him

- C. Which really interested him  
D. That interested him really
23. \_\_\_\_\_ your men have been on my land without permission.  
A. It seems that  
B. There seems to be  
C. That seems  
D. It seems for
24. \_\_\_\_\_ I have made no arrangements to deal with such cases.  
A. It appear that  
B. That appears  
C. They appear that  
D. It appears that
25. \_\_\_\_\_ that the first cheese was probably made more than 4,000 years ago by nomadic tribes in Asia.  
A. The belief  
B. Although they believe  
C. It is believed  
D. Believing
26. \_\_\_\_\_ to space travelers is high acceleration or deceleration forces.  
A. That can be dangerous  
B. What can be dangerous  
C. They can be dangerous  
D. It can be dangerous
27. \_\_\_\_\_ unstable and explodes as a supernova is not known.  
A. For a star to become

- B. How a star becomes  
C. A star becomes  
D. That a star is becoming
28. \_\_\_\_\_ composed traditionally has been a subject of debate among scholars.  
A. Where ballads how  
B. Ballads were how they  
C. How ballads that were  
D. How ballads were
29. \_\_\_\_\_ that the professor's strictness with him is not to punish a careless student but to teach him how to be precise.  
A. Joseph was dawned  
B. It was dawned on Joseph  
C. It dawned on Joseph  
D. Joseph dawned it on
30. \_\_\_\_\_ was not our concern.  
A. No matter how he might pass the examination  
B. Whether he passed the examination or not  
C. Though he might pass the examination  
D. While he passed the examination

### 1.3 单选题(宾语从句)

31. He asked me \_\_\_\_\_ I intended to do after my graduation.  
A. that what  
B. what  
C. that  
D. which

32. Listening carefully to \_\_\_\_\_ in class means less work later.
- A. what does the teacher say
  - B. what the teacher says
  - C. that the teacher says
  - D. which the teacher says
33. John didn't say \_\_\_\_\_ he would return, but I presume he'll be back for dinner.
- A. that when
  - B. when
  - C. if or not
  - D. where
34. After the accident, I opened my eyes slowly and realized \_\_\_\_\_ I was still alive.
- A. that
  - B. whether
  - C. what
  - D. which
35. No one knows exactly \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. how did speech begin
  - B. how speech began
  - C. how the beginning of speech
  - D. of how beginning speech
36. He wondered \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. what will be his wife's reaction
  - B. what would his wife's reaction be
  - C. how would be his wife's reaction
  - D. what his wife's reaction would be
37. A popular belief \_\_\_\_\_ radio and television have homog-



- enized the language of the United States.
- A. states that
  - B. that is stated
  - C. that states
  - D. stating that
38. I don't care \_\_\_\_\_ we are invited to the dinner.
- A. if or not
  - B. whether or not
  - C. what
  - D. that
39. Chinese officials made \_\_\_\_\_ clear that there could be no normalization of relation until the United States terminated diplomatic relations with Taiwan.
- A. that
  - B. them
  - C. it
  - D. this
40. He is wondering \_\_\_\_\_ a doctor.
- A. whether or not he should see
  - B. that he should see or not
  - C. if or not he should see
  - D. if to see or not

#### 1.4 单选题(表语从句)

41. The reason for my return is \_\_\_\_\_ I left my keys behind.
- A. because
  - B. it
  - C. that

- D. why
42. The mountain was \_\_\_\_\_ many animals, such as wolves, badges and rabbits once haunted but now it is so silent.
- A. that place
- B. where
- C. what
- D. then
43. The reason we're so late is \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. because of the car breaking down
- B. due the care broke down
- C. that the car broke down
- D. because the car broke down
44. The reason she failed in the exam was \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. that she hadn't worked hard
- B. because she hadn't worked hard
- C. why she hadn't worked hard
- D. because she was too careless
45. A hinge joint is \_\_\_\_\_ permits the forward and backward movement of a door.
- A. what
- B. that
- C. which
- D. where
46. Stopping pouring polluted water into the river is \_\_\_\_\_ the factory has to solve at present.
- A. what
- B. which
- C. as
- D. that

### 1.5 单选题(同位语从句)

47. There are signs \_\_\_\_\_ restaurants are becoming more popular with families.  
A. that  
B. which  
C. in which  
D. whose
48. Scientists have reached the conclusion \_\_\_\_\_ the temperature on Earth is getting higher and higher.  
A. what  
B. that  
C. which  
D. when
49. An idea came to her \_\_\_\_\_ she might do the experiment in another way.  
A. that  
B. what  
C. when  
D. which
50. Obviously there was little certainty \_\_\_\_\_ the chairman would agree to this proposal.  
A. which  
B. why  
C. what  
D. that
51. We were all overjoyed at the news \_\_\_\_\_ the experiment turned out a success.  
A. which

- B. that  
C. when  
D. what
52. I have no idea \_\_\_\_ has happened to him.  
A. what  
B. that  
C. which  
D. why
53. The author wishes to call our attention \_\_\_\_\_ modern man has polluted his environment to such an extent that he might destroy himself if he went on like that.  
A. to that  
B. in that  
C. to the fact which  
D. to the fact that

#### 1.6 填空题(what/which/that 辨析)

54. He didn't live up to \_\_\_\_\_ had been expected of him.  
A. what  
B. which  
C. that  
D. all what
55. I realized \_\_\_\_\_ I said was not exactly \_\_\_\_\_ I meant to say.  
A. what, that, what  
B. that, what, what  
C. that, which, which  
D. that, that, what
56. Although Anne is happy with her success she wonders

- \_\_\_\_\_ will happen to her private life.
- A. that  
B. what  
C. it  
D. which
57. The mere fact \_\_\_\_\_ most people believe nuclear war would be madness does not mean that it will not occur.
- A. what  
B. which  
C. that  
D. why
58. One of the qualities \_\_\_\_\_ (that/what/who/why) separate us two-legged animals from the four-legged ones is compassion. It is \_\_\_\_\_ (which/that/what) makes us stand up tall instead of crawling about on all fours. And standing up tall is \_\_\_\_\_ (which/that/what) frees our arms to reach out to a fellow being and say, "Let me help you."
59. Change is \_\_\_\_\_ (which/that/what) keeps us fresh and innovative. Change is \_\_\_\_\_ (which/that/what) keeps us from getting stale. Change is \_\_\_\_\_ (which/that/what) keeps us young.

### 1.7 单选题(综合练习,提高题)

60. If you had told me just \_\_\_\_\_ I was to do they would never have found fault with my handling of the case.
- A. that  
B. what  
C. which

- D. whatever
61. \_\_\_\_\_ the London Zoo will adopt as a measurement at the critical moment is to try all ways preserving the animals in the zoo.
- A. That  
B. What  
C. It's  
D. Whether
62. How close parents are to their children \_\_\_\_\_ a strong influence on the character of the children.
- A. have  
B. has  
C. having  
D. to have
63. \_\_\_\_\_ that snow men were often spotted on the mountainside above 7,000 meters by the local inhabitants.
- A. It was used to be saying  
B. It used to be said  
C. It used to say  
D. It was used to saying
64. The problem now is \_\_\_\_\_ we can adopt to overcome the difficulties in shortage of funds.
- A. what measure  
B. that measure  
C. measure that  
D. measure which
65. \_\_\_\_\_ theories approximate the truth is the day-to-day business of science.
- A. Determining how closely

- B. How closely to determine  
C. How one determines close  
D. One is close to determining
66. \_\_\_\_\_ the students think it their duty to study hard has laid the foundation for the university's high reputation.  
A. That all  
B. What  
C. All that  
D. What all
67. It's doubtful \_\_\_\_\_ the government of that country can accept them as permanent residents.  
A. whether  
B. that  
C. how  
D. what
68. It has always puzzled me \_\_\_\_\_ the old man tied a red silk ribbon on the young tree in his courtyard.  
A. that  
B. why  
C. where  
D. what
69. \_\_\_\_\_ was the "curiosity of all mankind to explore the unknown".  
A. That moved the human spirit  
B. What moved the human spirit  
C. What the human spirit moved  
D. Which moved the human spirit
70. \_\_\_\_\_ the mass of the nucleus is slightly less than the total mass of the protons and neutrons which made up the

nucleus.

- A. It found that
- B. It was found that
- C. It was found for
- D. It finds that

71. His success was due to \_\_\_\_\_ he had been working hard.

- A. that
- B. the fact which
- C. the fact that
- D. the fact of

72. \_\_\_\_\_ makes mistakes must correct them.

- A. What
- B. That
- C. Whoever
- D. Whatever

73. He works too hard. That is \_\_\_\_\_ is wrong with him.

- A. that which
- B. that what
- C. what
- D. the thing what

74. The reason why I plan to go is \_\_\_\_\_ if I don't.

- A. because she will disappoint
- B. that she will be disappointed
- C. because she will have been disappointed
- D. for she will be disappointed

75. "What is that building?"

"\_\_\_\_\_ the garden equipment is stored."

- A. There's in which
- B. That's where



- C. The building that  
D. That's the building which
76. You can take \_\_\_\_\_ room you prefer.  
A. to what  
B. whichever  
C. that  
D. who
77. Free movie tickets will be given to \_\_\_\_\_ comes first.  
A. whoever  
B. whomever  
C. whichever  
D. whatever
78. We agreed to accept \_\_\_\_\_ they thought was the best tourist guide.  
A. whatever  
B. whomever  
C. whichever  
D. whoever
79. Yet no firm evidence had come to light \_\_\_\_\_ the men arrested were actually responsible.  
A. which  
B. as  
C. what  
D. that
80. \_\_\_\_\_ that as both birds and mammals become larger, their metabolic rates per unit of tissue decrease, and they generally live longer.  
A. The truth  
B. It is true

- C. If true  
D. To be true
81. \_\_\_\_\_ is the center of our planetary system was a difficult concept to grasp in the Middle Ages.  
A. It is the sun and not the earth  
B. Being the sun and not the earth  
C. The sun and not the earth  
D. That the sun and not the earth
82. It is a widely held theory \_\_\_\_\_ the ancestral prototype of the flowering Astereles was a woody plant, perhaps a small tree.  
A. where  
B. until  
C. while  
D. that
83. \_\_\_\_\_ that his story may be a fabrication?  
A. Was it ever dawned upon you  
B. Have they ever dawned upon you  
C. Do they ever dawned upon you  
D. Has it ever dawned upon you
84. \_\_\_\_\_ he was the assassin.  
A. It had never occurred to me that  
B. He had occurred that  
C. To him occurred that  
D. What occurred to him was
85. The question is \_\_\_\_\_ can be put into practice.  
A. how you have learned  
B. how that you have learned  
C. that why you have learned

- D. how what you have learned
86. \_\_\_\_\_ the trainer wanted to tell is \_\_\_\_\_ Asian elephants are easier to tame than African ones.
- A. That, those  
B. What, that  
C. What, the  
D. That, which
87. When reports came into London Zoo \_\_\_\_\_ a wild puma had been spotted forty-five miles south of London, they were not taken seriously.
- A. what    B. as    C. which    D. that
88. Prof. Lee's book will show you \_\_\_\_\_ can be used in other contexts.
- A. that you have observed  
B. that how you have observed  
C. how that you have observed  
D. how what you have observed
89. The quantum theory states \_\_\_\_\_, such as light, is given off and absorbed in tiny definite units called quanta or photons.
- A. energy that  
B. that it is energy  
C. it is energy  
D. that energy
90. In the fourteenth century, \_\_\_\_\_ that glass coated with silver nitrate would turn yellow when fired in an oven.
- A. the discovery  
B. it was discovered  
C. with the discovery

D. if it was discovered

91. The early feminist leader Susan B. Anthony became increasingly aware through her work in the temperance movement \_\_\_\_\_ the same rights as men.
- A. women were not granted that
  - B. that women were not granted
  - C. not granted women that were
  - D. that were not granted women
92. The early years of the United States government were characterized by a debate concerning \_\_\_\_\_ or individual states should have more power.
- A. whether the federal government
  - B. either the federal government
  - C. that the federal government
  - D. the federal government
93. When I try to understand \_\_\_\_\_ that prevents so many Americans from being as happy as one might expect, it seems to me that there are two causes.
- A. why it does
  - B. what it does
  - C. what it is
  - D. why it is
94. Fossils records indicate \_\_\_\_\_ existing in the past have become extinct.
- A. that many species of organisms
  - B. many species of organisms that are
  - C. many species of organism are
  - D. there are many organisms
95. According to some educators, the goal of teaching is to

help students learn what \_\_\_\_\_ to know to live a well-adjusted and successful life.

- A. do they need
- B. they need
- C. they are needed
- D. as they may need

### 1.8 辨别改错

96. Nutritionists believe what diet affects how one feels  
                   A                                  B                                  C  
physically and emotionally.  
                   D
97. Is there any proof which the food of the plant differs from  
                                   A          B                                  C  
that of animals?
98. A man cannot be really happy if that he enjoys doing  
   A  
is ignored by society as of no value or importance.  
                   B                                  C                                  D
99. More and more people have realized such a fact of heart  
   A          B          C  
diseases are related to the way people live.  
                                   D
100. Widely acknowledged as a great and important play-  
   A  
 wright, Eugene O'Neill brought to the United States  
 stage it was probably its first really serious drama.  
                   B                                  C                                  D
101. We consider necessary that the instrument should be ad-  
                                   A          B                                  C  
 justed each time.  
                                   D

## 第一章 名词从句练习参考答案

### 1.1

1. There is a popular saying that family instability causes social instability.
2. No one knows exactly whether/if there is life on other planets.
3. No one knew whether/if interest rates would rise.
4. I am interested in the question whether people will live on the moon someday.
5. No one knows for sure whether/if the gains will be greater than the losses.
6. My question is whether we have enough time to go to the movie.
7. September 11, 2001 started out as an ordinary day, but what happened that morning will be forever etched (铭刻) in our memories.
8. What we need is wholly new kind of police force.
9. Children often ask how bears survive winter.
10. What he told you is true.
11. Who will chair the meeting has not yet been decided.
12. When the meeting is to be held has not yet been decided.
13. Why he refused to cooperate with us is still a mystery.
14. How a person masters his fate is more important than what his fate is.
15. Could you tell me where the post office is?
16. We don't know why he did not come yesterday.

17. This is where our basic interest lies.

18. My question is where we are going to have our holidays.

### 1.2-1.7

19-23 DCCBA 24-28 DCBBD 29-33 CBBBB  
34-38 ABDAB 39-43 CACBC 44-48 AAAAB  
49-53 ADBAD 54-57 ABBC 58 that, what, what  
59 what, what, what 60-64 BBBBA 65-69 AAABB  
70-74 BCCCB 75-79 BBADD 80-84 BDDDA  
85-89 DBDDD 90-94 BBACA 95 B

### 1.8

96. B/that  
97. B/that  
98. A/what  
99. C/that  
100. B/what  
101. A/it necessary

## 定语从句

### 第一节 先行词与关系词

所谓定语从句,简言之,即在句中有一个具有主谓结构的完整的句子来充当定语,修饰前面的名词(短语)或代词。这个起修饰作用的从句在功能上相当于一个形容词,所以也可称定语从句为形容词从句。

在《通悟语法》一书里我们也讨论过定语从句,不过那里的内容主要是介绍定语从句常见关系词的用法,以帮助读者了解定语从句的简单构造。在这里,我们将更加深入地了解定语从句,所讨论的内容将是更加贴近考试和难句阅读分析。具体内容包括:

全面理解先行词(见第6小节)

特殊关系词的用法(见9,10,11,12小节)

关系词前边如何加介词(见16,17,18小节)

各种结构复杂的定语从句(见22小节)



## 6. 全面理解“先行词”

我们知道,先行词和关系词是定语从句的两个重要概念,定语从句的核心内容就是围绕先行词和关系词展开的。我们现在简单回顾一下这两个重要概念。请看例句:

The girl is my girlfriend. She is dancing with that boy.



The girl / who is dancing with that boy is my girlfriend. (正在和那个男孩跳舞的女孩是我的女友。)

解释:

1) 先行词:被关系词所指代(如用 who 指代 the girl)、并且被定语从句所修饰或限制的对象称为先行词。上句中 the girl 即为先行词。

2) 关系词:重复指代先行词、起连接主句和从句的作用并且在定语从句中充当一定成分的连接词。上句中的 who 即为关系词。因此关系词有两个作用:a. 代词作用:重复指代先行词并且在定语从句中充当一定成分;b. 连接作用:起连接主句和从句的作用。

### ► 1. 先行词可以不只是一个词

尽管我们把定语从句所修饰的对象称之为先行词,但先行词并不一定都是一个“词”。先行词可以是:

1) 一个词(通常是名词,也可以是代词):

a. The *woman* who lives next door is a famous dancer.

b. *He* laughs best who laughs last. 谁笑到最后谁笑得最欢。

c. Never leave *that* until tomorrow which you can do today.

今日事,今日毕。

2) 短语:

He likes *climbing mountains*, which is a good exercise.

3) 一个分句:

He said *that he had no time*, which isn't true.

4) 一个完整的句子:

a. *He arrived an hour later*, which annoyed his girlfriend very much.

b. *My girlfriend likes dancing with other guys*, which really drives me crazy.

## ►2. 正确找出先行词

这是因为只有先正确找出先行词,才能明白定语从句所修饰的真正成分是什么,这样才能正确理解句子前后的逻辑关系,分清句子结构,从而正确理解句子意思。之所以这样讲,是因为有时先行词并不像常规那样紧靠着关系词(如下面的 a, b 句),而有时先行词与关系词之间插入了其他的成分(如 c, d, e, f 句),这时靠近关系词前面的名词就不是先行词。

1) 先行词紧靠关系词

a. There is a very interesting remark in a book by *a man who* is a great American writer.

b. The *woman who* lives next door is a famous dancer.

2) 先行词与关系词被分割

c. There is a very interesting remark in *a book* by an American writer *that I read recently*.

分析:先行词 a book 与关系代词 that 被先行词的另一个定语 by an American writer 所隔开,即先行词 a book 带有两个定语:一个是介词短语 by an American writer;另一个是 that 引导

的定语从句。

d. I don't suppose *anything* happens *that he doesn't foresee*.

分析:先行词 anything 与关系代词 that 被 suppose 的宾语从句中的谓语动词 happens 所隔开。

e. *He* laughs best *who laughs last*. 谁笑到最后谁笑得最欢。

f. Never leaves *that* until tomorrow *which you can do today*.

今日事今日毕。

### ►3. 正确找出“先行词”关系到:

1) 关系词的选择:

a. He needs a long spoon .. \_\_\_\_\_ sups with the devil.

- A. who
- B. which
- C. as
- D. when

正确答案:A。

因为定语从句的先行词是 he, 而不是 spoon。这是一句谚语, 字面意思是“同魔鬼一起喝汤需要用一把长勺子”, 言外之意就是“同坏人打交道需要提防着”。

b. The world is a book, and those read only a page \_\_\_\_\_ do not travel.

- A. which
- B. who
- C. what
- D. whom

正确答案:B。

先行词是指“人”的 those。

2) 定语从句中的主谓一致问题:

- 正确答案:C。应改为:are。先行词是 elements,而不是 insect。

- 正确答案:C。应改为:is。

先行词是 interaction, 而不是 lives。

综上所述,相信大家已体会到“抓住先行词”对于正确理解定语从句的重要意义。在今后的学习当中,碰到定语从句的时候,首先要想到“抓住先行词”。因为只有正确找到先行词,才能分清句子结构,理解句子各部分的逻辑关系,从而正确理解句子意思。

## 7. 关系词

### ► 1. 关系词的特点

定语从句总是由一定的关系词(尽管有时将其省去)来连接的,关系词在定语从句中起两个作用:

- 1) 连词作用:将定语从句与句子的其余部分连接起来。
- 2) 代词作用:用来重复指代其前而的先行词,且在定语从句中作句子成分。

## ►2. 关系词的分类

关系词可分为关系代词和关系副词,具体请看下表:

关系代词及关系副词一览表:

语法作用	可用于限制性及非限制性定语从句			用于限制性定语从句	
	人	物	其他	人及物	其他
主语	who	which		that	
宾语	who/whom	which		that 或省略 that	
所有关系	whose	whose / of which			
限定性		which			
状语			when, where		why

从上面的表格得知:

1) that 和 why 只引导限制性定语从句。

2) 关系代词:关系代词在从句中可充当主语、宾语或表语。其中 whose 一定要与名词连用,表示所属关系。which 可单独引导定语从句,也可用作限定词与名词连用。

{ who、whom → 指人  
 { which → 指物  
 { that、whose → 指人或指物

3) 关系副词:关系副词只充当状语:when 表时间,where 表地点,why 表原因。

注意:how 不可以作为表示方式的关系副词。在英语中,若表示方式,我们用以下句型:

the way { in which  
 { that  
 { 省略

a. During the 1940's science and engineering had an impact

on *the way* music reached its audience and even influenced *the way in which* it was composed.

- b. You know the old golden rule, "Care for others *the way* you would like them to care for you."

此外, 英文中尚有特殊关系代词: what、as、than、but, 这是我们重点的讨论内容。

## 第二节 关系代词的用法

### 8. 常见关系代词

常见的引导定语从句的关系代词及其用法在《通悟语法》一书中已经介绍过, 这里我们再简单回顾一下。

关系代词	用法	例句
指代人用 who, whom。	在从句中作主语不用 whom。	Students <i>who cheat</i> on exams will poison the atmosphere of the college. 在考试中作弊的学生会影响学校的校风。
	在介词后边不能用 who, 而只能用 whom	The girl <i>with whom</i> you work is his girl friend. 和你一起工作的那个女孩是他的女朋友。
指代物用 which。		Anger is a <i>wind which</i> blows out the lamp of the mind. 愤怒是吹灭心灵之灯的风。
that 指人、 指物均可。	指物	Anger is a <i>wind that</i> blows out the lamp of the mind. 愤怒是吹灭心灵之灯的风。
	指人	Students <i>that cheat</i> poison the atmosphere of the college.
	在介词后边不用 that	The world <i>in which</i> we live is made up of matter. 我们所生活的世界由物质组成。

关系代词	用法	例句
whose 后边要接名词, 表示所有关系。可以指人或物。	指人	It is almost impossible to find two persons <i>whose opinions</i> are the same.
	指物	It was a meeting <i>whose importance</i> I did not realize at the time.
	指物的 whose 可以和 of which 互换	These children sit in a schoolroom <i>whose windows</i> are all broken. These children sit in a schoolroom <i>of which all the windows</i> are broken.

下面我们重点介绍 as, what, than, but 这四个特殊关系词的用法。

## 9. As 的用法

► 1. 在 as 引导限制性定语从句时, 只是用在一些固定的结构中, 即只能用在 such, the same, as, so 的后面。请看例句:

- a. He'll repeat *such* points *as* are discussed in the book.
  - b. *Such* a student *as* works hard will be sure to succeed.
  - c. He tried to make *as* few mistakes *as* he could avoid.
  - d. He is not *the same* playboy *as* we knew.
  - e. The instrument is not such an instrument as I saw on the exhibition.
  - f. He is not such a man \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ would leave his work half done.
- A. who  
B. whom  
C. as

D. that

正确答案:C。

►2. as 引导非限定性定语从句可位于句首,而 which 不能这样用。

a. As is known, the whale is not fish but a mammal. 众所周知,鲸不是鱼类,而是哺乳类动物。(as 指的是 the whale is not fish but a mammal 整个句子。)

b. \_\_\_\_\_ is known to the world, Mark Twain is a great American writer. (CET-4)

A. That

B. Which

C. As

D. It

正确答案:C。

c. \_\_\_\_\_ might be expected, the response to the question was very mixed. (CET-4 95.1)

A. As

B. That

C. Which

D. What

正确答案:A。

►3. as 和 which 都可引导非限定性定语从句,代替前面整个句子。

a. He married her, as /which was natural.

b. He was late for school, which/as is often the case.

但因为 as 引导的定语从句有“正好…”,“就像…”,“由…而



知”的含义。所以,当主句和从句内容上一致时,或者说从句内容是顺着主句意思说下来时,用 as。若主句和从句内容上不一致,或从句的内容对主句的内容起反对、排斥、否定等消极的作用时,则多用 which,试分析比较如下:

- a. The young man cheated his friend of much money, which was disgraceful.
- b. She has married again,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{as was expected.} \\ \text{which was unexpected.} \end{array} \right.$
- c. The elephant is like a snake, which is not right.
- d. The gentleman admires Mrs. Brown, which surprised me.
- e. She is very careful, as her work shows. 她很细心,这从她的工作中就可看得出来。

## 10. What 用法

what 作为关系代词,用法很特殊,它是先行词和关系代词的结合体(我们姑且就把它称之为“**缩合关系词**”)。它的一般含义可理解为:the things that、all that。

具体用法有以下三点:

### ► 1. what 前不能有先行词。

what 包括一个关系代词及其“先行词”。所以,what 前面不能再有先行词的出现。换句话说,如果句中已有先行词,就一定不能再使用 what 引导定语从句。

如:我们不能说:

- a. You can have *everything* what you like.
- b. All \_\_\_\_\_ is a continuous supply of the basic necessities of

life. (CET-4-90-01)

- A. what is needed
- B. the things needed
- C. for our needs
- D. that is needed

正确答案:D。

## ►2. what 单独使用。

此时, what 作关系代词, 可表示物, 也可表示人。

- a. She is not **what** she used to be. (She is not *the girl that* she used to be.)
- b. Show me **what** you have written. (show me *the things that* you have written.)
- c. He is not **what** he was a few years ago. (what 指人: *the man that*)

我们注意到以上句中 **what** 前均没有先行词。

## ►3. what + 名词

此时, what 作关系形容词, 结构是“what + 名词”, 意为“所有的…, 尽可能多的…”

- a. I will give you **what help** I can. (我会尽可能地帮你)
- b. **What money** I have has been given to you. = *All the money that* I have... 我身上所有的钱都给了你了。
- c. Lend me **what reference books** you have on the subject. = Lend me *all the reference books that* you have on the subject. 请把你所有的有关这个研究专题的参考书借给我。

以上是 what 最基本的两条用法, 其中“what 前不能有先行词出现”是正确使用 what 的一个前提。凡是由 what 引导的定语从

句均可改为“特定的先行词 + 关系代词 that”。这说起来较为简单,但在实际使用过程中又较为复杂,有时难以判断 what 之前到底是有还是没有“先行词”。

请分析如下练习:

1. Beethoven, the great musician, wrote nine symphonies in  
his life, most of what were written after he had lost his  
hearing.  
A  
B C D
2. As for the winter, it is inconvenient to be cold, with most  
of \_\_\_\_\_ furnace fuel is allowed saved for the dawn.  
A. what  
B. that  
C. which  
D. such
3. Most of \_\_\_\_\_ food elephant eat is brought to their  
mouths by their trunks.  
A. what  
B. which  
C. that  
D. as
4. Most of the food what elephants eat is brought to their  
mouths by their trunks.  
A B C D
5. Most of \_\_\_\_\_ archaeologists know about prehistoric cul-  
tures is based on studies of material remains.  
A. these  
B. what  
C. which

## D. their

我们先对上述习题进行分析研究,让大家进一步明确 *what* 的用法。

**No.1:** B 错。应改为: *most of which*。因为这里的 *what* 它前面有先行词 *nine symphonies*, 所以改成 *most of which*, 也就相当于 *most of nine symphonies*。

**No.2:** 应选答案 A: *what*。这个句子有一定的难度, *with* 前的主句我们不难理解, 关键是 *with* 后面成分的理解。

1) 其实, 这里实际上是由 *with* 引导的一个独立分词结构(详细内容参见“分词”一章), 其一般结构是: *with* + 名词或名词性短语 + 分词。此句中的结构可看成: *with* + *what* 引导的一个名词从句(相当于名词短语) + *saved for the dawn*(分词结构)。这个 *with* 独立分词结构在句中作状语, 表示原因。

2) 我们再来分析这个由 *what* 引导的名词从句: *most of what furnace fuel is allowed*。据以上分析我们得知, *what* 前没有先行词, 这里的 *what* 是上面所说的 *what* 第二种用法: *what* + 名词 (*furnace fuel*)。引导的名词从句确切地说应为: *what furnace fuel is allowed*(所分配的锅炉燃料), 可改为定语从句: *all the furnace fuel that is allowed*。然后再加上 *most of* (*what furnace fuel is allowed*), 也就相当于: *most of all the furnace fuel that is allowed*, 即“所分配的锅炉燃料中的大部分”, 不要将其理解成: (*most of what furnace fuel*) *is allowed*。

3) 此句可译成: 到了冬天, 由于所分配的锅炉燃料中的大部分需要节省下来等到黎明时候再用, 因此(夜里)冷得难受。

**No.3:** 应选答案 A: *what*。这里也还是 *what* 的第二种用法: *what* + 名词 (*food*), *what* 前没有先行词。

**No.4:** B 错。应改为: *which* 或 *that*。因为此句中有先行词 *food*。大家可将其与第三题进行比较。

**No.5:** 应选答案 B: *what*。*what* 前没有先行词, 且又引导一

个 what 从句。

附带说明的是, what 引导的从句从结构上看,既可以理解为定语从句也可理解为名词从句。

## 11. Than 作关系代词的用法(考研常考题)

用法特点:

- 1) than 可作关系代词引导定语从句,在从句中一般作主语。
  - 2) than 前面的主句需有形容词比较级形式。
- a. Don't drink *more* wine *than is good for health*. 不要饮酒过量。适量饮酒有益于健康。
  - b. Don't give him *more* money *than is needed*, since money will burn a hole in his pocket. 不要多给他钱,他需要多少就给多少,因为他有钱就花。
  - c. Today we know a great deal more about the sea *than was known in ancient times*.
  - d. There ought to be *less anxiety* over the perceived risk of getting cancer than \_\_\_\_\_ in the public today.  
A. exists  
B. exist  
C. existing  
D. existed

分析:这里的 than 指 anxiety,所以选 A。

译文:人们不应该像如今这样担心害怕患上癌症。

than 也可在从句中作宾语:

- e. For now, however, it does appear that the economy can sustain a higher growth rate *than most people thought impossible just a year or two ago*. In that limited respect, at least, we appear to be in a "New Economy". 不过,目前

我们的经济确实实现了持续的、较快的增长,该增长率在...两年前是绝大多数人认为不可能实现的。所以,仅此而言,我们正处于一个“新经济时代”。

- f. He soon found it easy to make much more money by thieving *than his father had done by a lifetime of honest work*.

很快他就发现,通过盗窃所挣的钱比他老爸一辈子辛勤劳作所挣的要多得多。

## 12. But 的用法

用法特点:

- 1) *but* 作关系代词,相当于 *that... not*, *who... not*, *whom... not*, 在句中作主语或宾语,可指人也可指物。
- 2) 尽管定语从句形式上肯定,但在意义上是否定的。
- 3) 常与具有否定意义的主句连用。
- 4) 通常只引导限制性定语从句。
  - a. There is *no* man *but* errs. (= There is *no* man who *doesn't* err. *but* 作主语) 人必犯错。
  - b. There are very few *but* admire his talents. (= There are very *few* who *don't* admire his talents. *but* 作主语) 很少有人赞赏他的才干。
  - c. There are very *few* people in this club *but* he knows. (= There are very few people in this club *whom* he *doesn't* know. *but* 作宾语)

## 第三节 关系副词的用法

在英语中,引导定语从句的关系副词主要有 *when*、*where*、

why, 它们在从句中分别作时间状语、地点状语和原因状语, 它们又都可用“相应的介词 + which”来替换。

### 13. When 的用法

► 1. 可引导限制性和非限制性定语从句, 其先行词须是表示时间  
的名词, 如 day, year, time 等。When 可用 on which 来替换。

- a. I'll never forget the day *when* I met you.
- b. I'll never forget the day *on which* I met you.
- c. I'll never forget the day *that* I met you. (特别关注: 此句中 that 用作关系副词)
- d. April Fool's Day is *that special day* of the year *when* you should play a joke on someone! Children's favorites are to put salt in the sugar bowl for Dad's morning coffee or put chalk on a desk chair at school so the teacher gets a white backside! But remember, if you play a joke after 12 at noon, YOU are the April Fool!
- e. We will put off the outing until *next week*, *when* we won't be so busy.
- f. March 10, 1876 was the *day when* (= on which) the first complete sentence was sent over a telephone.
- g. My favorite season is *spring*, *when* the earth seems born again.
- h. The *day* may soon come *when* we don't bother to go to office but just work at home.
- i. This kind of solar cooker can be used only in the daytime  
\_\_\_\_\_ the sun is shining.  
A. when

- B. as
- C. while
- D. since

正确答案:A。

►2. 紧跟时间名词后边的关系副词,也可省去。例如:

- a. I'll never forget *the day I met you*.
- b. Most education experts today stress the importance of "life-long learning". They point out that education never ends. It is a continuous process. *The day we stop learning* is the day when we die.

►3. 当心:表示时间的先行名词,若定语从句不是缺状语,而是缺少主语或宾语,要用 *which* 或 *that* 来引导定语从句。因为用 *when* 来引导定语从句的前提条件是:*when* 在其引导的定语从句中作时间状语。

- a. I'll never forget the time *which I spent* on campus.  
*which* 作 *spent* 的宾语
- b. I'll never forget the day *when* we first met in the park.  
*when* 作时间状语,修饰 *met*。
- c. The hours \_\_\_\_\_ the children spend in their one-way relationship with television people undoubtedly affect their relationships with real-life people. (2000 年 12 月 CET-4)  
A. when  
B. on which  
C. that  
D. in which

分析:这句话的定语从句中的谓语 *spend* 缺宾语,因此填入的关系



词要充当这一宾语,故正确答案为 C。

## 14. Where 的用法

► 1. 引导定语从句,作状语,其前先行词必须是表示地点的名词,如 place, house 等。

- a. Do you know any *place where* I can buy Clint's grammar book?
- b. Do you know any *place at which* I can buy Clint's grammar book?
- c. Do you know any *place that* I can buy Clint's grammar book?
- d. Do you know any *place* I can buy Clint's grammar book?
- e. This is the *town where* (= in which) I spent my childhood.
- f. This is the *restaurant where* I often have my breakfast.
- g. —Since you work in the theater, can't you get me a free ticket now and then?  
—Certainly if you bring me a few notes now and then from the *bank where* you work!

► 2. 当心:与 when 类似,并非凡是表示地点的名词作先行词,都得由 where 来引导定语从句,这得看关系词在从句中充当的成分。若定语从句缺主语或宾语,要用 which 或 that 引导定语从句。

- a. This is the *town which* I told you about before.  
*which* 作 about 的宾语
- b. The library *where* students often study was on fire last

night.

- c. The library, **which** was built in the 1930's, needs to be renovated.
- d. I've never been to Beijing, but it's the place \_\_\_\_\_.  
(99-6 CET-6)
- A. where I'd like to visit
- B. in which I'd like to visit
- C. I most want to visit
- D. that I want to visit it most

分析:这句话的定语从句中的谓语 visit 缺宾语,因此填入的关系词要充当这一宾语,故正确答案 C。

► 3. where 的先行词可以是含有地点意义的抽象名词,如 situation, point 等。

- a. Cheating is most likely in **situations where** the vital interests are high and the chances of getting caught are low.  
如果利益重大而且被人发现的可能性又很小,在这种情况下,欺诈行为最有可能发生。
- b. He has reached the **point where** a change is needed. 他已到了需要改弦易辙的地步。
- c. The knee is the **joint where** the thigh bone meets the large bone of the lower leg.
- d. We may encounter situations \_\_\_\_\_ this principle cannot be applied.
- A. where
- B. which
- C. what
- D. as

分析:原句本来应是: We may encounter situations **which** this principle cannot be **applied to**。然后,从句末的介词通常要置于关系代词前边(关于“介词+关系代词”,见本章第四节),于是改成:

We may encounter situations **to which** this principle cannot be **applied**.

并进而变成:

We may encounter situations **where** this principle cannot be **applied**.

所以,正确答案为:A。

#### ► 4. 区分 where 引导的地点状语从句和定语从句:

若是定语从句,则 where 前边必然有被修饰的地点名词;若 where 前边没有名词则视为地点状语从句。请比较:

定语从句	When you read books, you had better make a mark at <b>the spot where you have any question</b> .	看书时,最好在有问题的地方作上标记。
地点状语从句	When you read books, you had better make a mark <b>where you have any question</b> .	看书时,最好在有问题的地方作上标记。

要注意的是:只有定语从句中的 where 才能转换成“介词+which”的结构,而地点状语从句的 where 不能。请比较:

- Would you please put the book **where** it belongs? 请把书放回原处。
- Would you please put the book **to which** it belongs? (错误)

上句为 where 引导的地点状语从句,而非定语从句,因为

where 前的名词(book)不是表示地点,即 where 前面没有先行词。

## 15. Why 的用法

用来表原因,只引导限制性定语从句,先行词是 reason 等表示原因的名词。

- a. This is the reason *why* I didn't come here. (此处 *why* = for which)

## 第四节 介词 + 关系代词

我们常常碰到定语从句的关系代词(主要是 which, whom 或 whose)前带有介词或介词短语的情况,这些介词什么时候不要,什么时候必须加,以及究竟用什么介词,这些问题对于学习者来说是有一定难度的。

下面根据我个人的研究总结出三条规律:

## 16. 根据定语从句中的线索来判断介词

这些线索可以是:

- 1) 定语从句中的动词。这是主要线索,所选介词需与动词搭配。(最常见)

- a. The buzzard (秃鹰) can watch high in the sky the ground for signs of the waste and the dead animals *on which* it *feeds*. 或... animals *which* it *feeds on*. 秃鹰可以从高空往地上搜寻它们要吃的垃圾和动物尸体。
- b. It was luck again, according to Nina, that brought her the role in Mute Wife *for which* she is best *known*. 尼娜认

为,这次她又是幸运地在《哑巴妻子》这部芭蕾舞剧中担任角色,她正是以此剧目最为出名。

- c. This is the shop *of which* I often *speak* to you. 这就是我常常同你提起的那个店铺。
- d. He is the man *on whom* I think you can *depend*. 我认为你可以依靠他,他这人是靠得住的。
- e. The goals *for which* he had *fought* all his life no longer seemed important to him. 他毕生为之奋斗的目标现在对他来说似乎并不重要了。
- f. The girl *with whom* you *work* is his girlfriend. 和你一起工作的那个女孩是他的女朋友。
- g. Let me say how grateful I am to all those who supported me and supported the cause *for which* we have *fought*.  
(from Al Gore's Concession Speech)
- h. We must preserve the freedoms *for which* our ancestors fought.

2) 定语从句中的形容词。所选介词与形容词构成短语。(比较常见)

- a. They will pass along their fresh impressions to the youth groups *in which* they are *active*. 他们回来后会把自己对国外的印象与同组的其他成员进行交流。
- b. We assume that the meanings of these underwater sounds are similar to those *with which* we are *familiar* on land.  
据我们推测,这些水底声音的意义同我们所熟悉的陆地上的声音的意义相似。
- c. Dolphins might be trained to cooperate with fishermen and help them by finding, tracking, herding, or even catching fish... *in* all of which activities dolphins are *expert*. 可以训练海豚来与渔民们合作,帮他们找到或是跟踪鱼群,

或把鱼聚集成群,甚至是捕鱼,这些活动都是海豚所擅长的。

- d. He referred me to some reference books *with which* I am not very *familiar*. 他让我参考的几本书我一本也不熟悉。

3) 定语从句中的名词。所选介词要求与名词搭配,如: *attention to*。(较少用)

I am sending you an inquiry, *to which* your prompt *attention* is highly appreciated. 兹寄去询价单一纸,望尽快办理,不胜感激。

## 17. 根据先行词来判断介词

所选用的介词与先行词构成固定搭配。比如: *at the rate*, *in the direction*, *to the extent*, *to the degree*, *at the temperature*, *with ease*, *by the means* 等等。先看两个简单句:

About a thousand species of animals are in danger of extinction. They are being destroyed *at this rate* and *the rate* has increased. 约有 1000 种动物濒临灭绝,它们目前正在以这样的速度遭到杀戮,而且这速度还一直在加快。

我们现在要明确说是什么速度在增加: *The rate* (接定语) *has increased*. 于是用 *They are being destroyed at this rate* 作定语修饰 *the rate*。我们便得到:

*The rate (they are being destroyed at which) has increased.*

连词要放在从句开头,所以有:

*The rate (at which they are being destroyed) has increased.*

最后,我们得出一个标准的定语从句如下:

- a. About a thousand species of animals are in danger of extinction, and *the rate at which* they are being destroyed has increased. 约有 1000 种动物濒临灭绝,而且受残害

的速度日益加剧。

更多例句,请认真分析:

- b. When television was first introduced, *the extent to which* it would affect society could not have been foreseen. 最早发明电视的时候,人们并没有预见到它会对人类社会产生重大影响。
- c. It is useful to be able to predict the extent \_\_\_\_\_ which a price change will affect supply and demand. (97-1 CET-4)
- A. from  
B. with  
C. to  
D. for

正确答案:C。

- d. Public demonstrations are an effective *means by which* the people can bring social inequalities to the attention of government officials. 公众通过游行示威这种方式,可以有效地让政府官员们注意到不平等的社会现实。
- e. *The speed at which* an animal lives is determined by measuring *the rate at which* it uses oxygen. 通过测定动物消耗氧气的速率可以确定该动物的生长速度。
- f. Americans regard education as the *means by which* the inequalities among individuals are to be erased and *by which* every desirable end is to be achieved. 美国人认为,教育可以改变个人的命运,实现个人的理想。
- g. A frequent criticism of most online companies has been the snail's *pace at which* they deliver their products. 人们对于大多数网络公司的怨言是他们送货的速度太慢,像是蜗牛在爬。
- h. The pressure from spending in turn determines the *ease*

*with which* prices increase. 来自消费的压力转而又决定了价格上涨的快慢。

- i. The ease \_\_\_\_\_ the fish can be collected from the shore has almost resulted in its extinction. (CET-4)

A. which  
B. with what  
C. with which  
D. with that

正确答案:C。

- j. By bringing about a great leap in the *speed and ease with which* information moves from place to place, the Internet has greatly accelerated the rate of scientific and technological changes. 因特网使信息传递更快捷、方便,由此大大加速了科技变革的进程。

## 18. 表示所属关系或部分与整体关系时用介词 *of*

表示所属关系或部分与整体关系的介词常用的是 *of*, 此时 *of* 要前置。

- a. I bought a book *of which* the author is a farmer. = ... the author of which...
- b. The company, *of which* Max Harrison was until recently *the chairman*, has made loss of three million pounds this year. 这家公司今年亏损达三百万英镑,直到前不久 Max Harrison 还是它的董事长。
- c. I saw two dwarfs at the circus *of whom neither* was over three feet tall. = ... neither of whom...
- d. The total cultivated area is 13,000 acres, \_\_\_\_\_ 10,000 acres are irrigated fields.



- A. which
- B. of which
- C. in that
- D. of that

分析:这里显然是说在 13000 英亩中有 10000 英亩是需要灌溉的田地。正是部分与整体关系,所以正确答案是:B。

- e. The course normally attracts 20 students per year, \_\_\_\_\_ up to half will be from overseas. (98.6 CET-4)
- A. in which
  - B. for whom
  - C. with which
  - D. of whom

分析:同样表示部分与整体关系,相当于 up to half of the 20 students,故选 D。

与此结构类似的有:a number of whom / which, half of whom / which, the youngest of whom 等,即限定词 some、any、none、all、both、several、enough、neither, 数字以及最高级 + of whom 或 of which 的结构。

## 19. in which to do 结构

“介词+关系代词”这一定语从句结构,可以简化成不定式。请看比较:

- a. The farmer used wood to build a house *in which he could* store grains.
- b. The farmer used wood to build a house *in which to store* grains.

进一步简化为:

- c. The farmer used wood to build a house *to store grains in*.

用这一结构时我们应注意以下几点:

1) 若没有介词,我们不能采用这一结构。

I can't think of anybody *whom to invite*. \*

2) 有介词和关系代词,不能将介词置于句末。

The farmer used wood to build a house *which to store grains in*. \*

3) 介词 + 关系代词不能用一个关系副词来替换。

The farmer used wood to build a house *where to store grains*. \*

再看下例:

d. We moved to the country so that the kids would have a garden \_\_\_\_\_.

A. in which to play

B. to play with

C to play in

D to play

E. where to play

F which to play

G which to play in

由以上分析我们可知此题正确答案有:A,C。

e. The professor could hardly find sufficient grounds \_\_\_\_\_ his arguments in favor of the new theory. (CET-4-2000-6)

A. to be based on

B. to base on

C. which to base on

D. on which to base

正确答案:D。

思考与总结:

1. 上述三种判断关系代词前面的介词的方法,以第一、二种

方法最常用。

2. 如何决定用第一种方法还是用第二种方法:

关键是对各种短语的介词搭配要熟悉,这是前提。

1) 如果先行词是普通的名词(如:book 没有什么介词与其构成固定的搭配),则一般可考虑采用第一种方法:分析与定语从句中的某个动词、形容词或名词构成固定搭配的介词。如:

He referred me to some reference books *with which* I am not very *familiar*.

2) 对于较为特殊的先行词,如上文提到的 extent (to the extent), means (by the means), ease (with ease), rate (at the rate), pace (at the pace) 等,则可考虑第二种方法:选择与先行词构成固定搭配的介词。

3. 介词的位置:

1) 与动词和形容词搭配的介词:可前置(置于关系代词前),也可后置(分别紧跟在动词或形容词后面)。但若将介词后置,即置于定语从句中,则句子显得较为松散,所以最好还是前置,显得句子紧凑。

2) 其他情形的介词一般都只能前置(所使用的介词要放在 *which* 或 *whom* 或 *whose* 的前面)。

## 第五节 That / Which 与定语从句 和名词从句

### 20. That 在定语从句与名词从句中

比较:

1) 在名词从句中, *that* 均不充当句子成分,所以 *that* 后面一

定要接完整的陈述句。

2) 在定语从句中, *that* 一定充当句子成分, 如作主语、宾语或表语。所以 *that* 后面接不完整的陈述句。

a. *The rumor that* he spread everywhere turned out to be untrue.

b. *The rumor that* Tom was a thief turned out to be untrue.

以上两句先行词都是 the rumor, 连接词都是 *that*。

但 a 句中的 *that* 在从句 he spread everywhere 中作成分, 充当 spread 的宾语。故为定语从句。

b 句中的 *that* 在从句 Tom was a thief 中不作任何成分。从句 Tom was a thief 是一个完整的句子, 不缺任何成分, 故其为同位语从句, 作 the rumor 的同位语, 补充说明 the rumor 的具体内容。

c. The fact *that* we talked about is very important. (*that* 作 about 的宾语, 定语从句)

d. The fact *that* he succeeded in the experiment pleased everybody. (*that* 不充当成分, 同位语从句)

e. The fact *that* there are no lives on the moon is known to us all. (同位语从句)

f. The fact *that* you pointed out made me interested. (定语从句)

所以, 上句可改写为: The fact *which* you pointed out made me interested. 若是同位语从句, 则不能把 *that* 换成 *which*。

## 21. Which 在定语从句与名词从句中

比较:

1) 在名词从句中, *which* 作为限定词, 不能单独使用, 必须是“*which* + 名词”。

2) 在定语从句中, which 通常作为关系代词单独使用。

- a. You should vote for *which candidate* you assume best.
- b. Anger is a wind *which* blows out the lamp of the mind.  
愤怒是吹灭心灵之灯的风。
- c. Yet no firm evidence had come to light \_\_\_\_\_ the men arrested were actually responsible.  
A. which  
B. as  
C. what  
D. that

分析:这是一个同位语从句,所以不能用 which。因为有先行词,所以不能用 what。正确答案:D。

## 第六节 各种复杂定语从句

### 22. 各种复杂的定语从句

有时,在较难的英语文章里或较高级的英语考试中,定语从句并非像“名词+定语从句”这样的简单结构,而是会出现各种复杂的结构。造成定语从句结构复杂的主要原因有:

#### ►1. 定语从句后置

在前面也提到过,有时定语从句不是紧跟在先行词后边,而是被其他修饰成分隔开。这时,往往会造成不知道定语从句到底修饰哪部分的情况。请看例句:

- a. Consequently, *nothing* seems good or normal *that does not*

*accord with the requirements of the free market.*

分析:定语从句是修饰 nothing 的,此句还含有双重否定:nothing ... that does not...。增加了理解的困难。

译文:因此,只有符和自由市场要求的事物才会是好的或正常的。

b. It is *the interaction* between people rather than the events that occur in their lives *that is* the main focus of social psychology.

分析:这句有个很重要的提示 rather than(而不是)告诉我们,被定语从句所修饰的成分不会在 rather than 后边。介词短语 between people 用来修饰 interaction,再根据定语从句的意思:社会心里学研究的核心是……,综合起来我们推断,that 从句修饰的是 the interaction。

译文:社会心里学研究的核心不是发生在人们日常生活中的事件,而是人们之间的相互作用影响。

## ►2. 带有插入语的定语从句

所谓带有插入语的定语从句,即是指在有些定语从句的关系词后边往往紧跟一个“主谓结构”,但这个“主谓结构”并非从句的主谓语,而是一个表达个人观点的插入语。

请看例句:

a. He ran all the way from the station, *which I thought was* incredible. 他大老远从车站跑过来,我觉得这真让人难以置信。

上面这句定语从句可改写为:..., which, I thought, was incredible. I thought 即为插入语,并非从句中的主谓结构。从句主语是 which,谓语是 was。

注意:定语从句的插入语一般都要紧跟在关系词后边。

- b. Tax cuts have been on George W Bush's mind since he became president of the United States. One of his first acts in government was to announce cuts *which he claimed would* give back US\$ 1.6 trillion to the American people over 10 years. 实施减税是小布什上台以来一直想要推行的一项政策。他上台后的第一件事就是宣布这一政策，他声称该项措施在十年之内将会使 1.6 万亿美元重新回到美国人民口袋里。

再看下面这道题：

- c. This is the woman \_\_\_\_\_ artists said posed as a model for the painting.  
A. whose  
B. who  
C. which  
D. whom

分析：此题关键是分析出要填人的关系词在从句中应充当何种成分。原句可以改写成：This is the woman \_\_\_\_\_, artists said, posed as a model for the painting. 所以，artists said 只是插入语，posed 才是从句的谓语，因此空格处要作主语并且指代 the woman。故正确答案为：B。

### ►3. 并列定语从句

所谓并列定语从句，是指两个或两个以上的定语从句通过并列连词 and, but, or 连接，来共同修饰同一个先行词。请看例句：

- a. Greater expense does not always equal better gift. I would much rather receive *a gift that* was unique *or that* I knew my friend had put some thought into rather than *something that* cost a lot of money *but that* I didn't need or

want. I would much rather receive *something that* made me laugh, made me reminisce, or fit my personality than *something that* cost a lot but *that* I will just throw in my closet and forget about. (礼物并不是价格越高就越贵重,我倒希望收到的礼物是很别致的,或是我知道朋友为我精心准备的,而不是花费很多却不是我所想要或需要的。我希望的是能够让我开心、让我回味过去时光、或是适合我口味的礼物,而不是价格不菲、看完之后随手就扔到储藏室、抛在脑后的礼物。)

- b. Friendship is a very difficult thing. It is hard to handle. It creates many different problems. In fact I would say that friendship is as hard to handle as love is, or even marriage. Of course I am not talking about easy-come-easy-go friendship. I'm talking about *friends who* care deeply about each other, *who* support each other, and *who* make life worth living. I'm talking about friends who you can share almost everything with.

#### ►4. 双层定语从句

双层定语从句较复杂,也很少见到。其特点是:

1) 一个先行词首先被一个限制性定语从句所修饰,来表示一个特定的意思。然后,这个“先行词+限制性定语从句”再被另外一个限制性定语从句所修饰。

2) 这两个限制性定语从句是处在不同层次上的,不能用连词 and, but, or 等来连接它们,因为这种定语从句并不是像上面讲到的“并列定语从句”那样在同一个先行词后有两个并列的定语从句。

请看例句:



- a. He is the only person *that we know who speaks* so many foreign languages.

第一层定语从句 *that we know* 的先行词为: the only person

第二层定语从句 *who speaks so many foreign languages* 的先行词为: the only person that we know

- b. Dr. Kissinger is the only person (that) we know who can eat caviar with chopsticks.

第一层定语从句的先行词为: the only person

第二层定语从句的先行词为: the only person we know

- c. 请看《魂断蓝桥》的一段对白:

**Mara:** *What was it you started to tell me in the restaurant that you didn't understand about me?* (你刚才在餐馆里想要告诉我的说你了解我的是什么来着?)

**Laurie:** No use going into it now.

**Mara:** No, but tell me, please, I'd like to know.

**Laurie:** Well, it... it struck me as curious ever since I met you, you know, from that very early moment ages ago... you're so young, so lovely, and so defeatist. I mean you don't seem to expect much from life.

**Mara:** Well, I'll be all right. For instance, I met you, I liked you, and now so soon we have to part, and perhaps we'll never see each other again.

第二章 定语从句练习

2.1 单项选择(学会识别先行词)

1. Another food crop raised by Indians \_\_\_\_\_ strange to the European was called Indian corn.  
A. who were  
B. that were  
C. that was  
D. who was
2. The time is not far away \_\_\_\_\_ modern communications will become widespread in China's vast countryside.  
A. as  
B. when  
C. until  
D. before
3. They helped us time and again, \_\_\_\_\_ very kind of them.  
A. who were  
B. which was  
C. that was  
D. which were
4. Those guilty of a serious crime \_\_\_\_\_ refuse to reform must be severely punished.  
A. which  
B. whom  
C. when  
D. who
5. Helen was much kinder to her youngest child than she was

to the others, \_\_\_\_\_ of course, made others jealous.

- A. who
- B. that
- C. what
- D. which

## 2.2 单项选择(常见关系代词用法)

6. Beer is the most popular drink among male drinkers, \_\_\_\_\_ overall consumption is significantly higher than that of women.

- A. whose
- B. which
- C. that
- D. what

7. The residents, \_\_\_\_\_ had been damaged by the flood, were given help by the red Cross.

- A. all their homes
- B. all who homes
- C. all of whose homes
- D. all of their homes

8. The professor and her achievement \_\_\_\_\_ you told me about are admired by us all.

- A. who
- B. which
- C. that
- D. whom

9. I don't suppose anything happens \_\_\_\_\_ he doesn't foresee.

- A. that

- B. which  
C. what  
D. as
10. They shouted with the loudest voice \_\_\_\_\_ they could.  
A. when  
B. that  
C. which  
D. what
11. This is the best book \_\_\_\_\_ on the subject.  
A. which there is  
B. that there is  
C. which is  
D. what is
12. What's in a name? That \_\_\_\_\_ we call a rose by any other name would smell as sweet.  
A. what  
B. that  
C. which  
D. when
13. \_\_\_\_\_ I have already mentioned, cardio-surgery is one of the amazing new surgical techniques that have been developed in recent years.  
A. Which  
B. What  
C. As  
D. This
14. The meeting was postponed, \_\_\_\_\_ was exactly what I wanted.  
A. that

- B. which
- C. and which
- D. this

### 2.3 单项选择(特殊关系代词)

15. Such people \_\_\_\_\_ knew Tom thought he was a trustworthy man.
- A. that
  - B. which
  - C. as
  - D. what
16. The British are not so familiar with different cultures and other ways of doing things, \_\_\_\_\_ is often the case in other countries.
- A. as
  - B. what
  - C. so
  - D. that
17. In her time, Isadora Duncan was \_\_\_\_\_ today a liberated woman.
- A. calling what we would
  - B. who would be calling
  - C. what we would call
  - D. she would call it
18. They lost their way in the forest, and \_\_\_\_\_ made matters worse was that night began to fall.
- A. that
  - B. it
  - C. what

- D. which
19. He is not such a man \_\_\_\_\_ would leave his work half done.  
A. who  
B. whom  
C. as  
D. that
20. Water will continue to be \_\_\_\_\_ it is today \_\_\_\_\_ next in importance to oxygen.  
A. how  
B. which  
C. as  
D. what
21. Much more money has been earned in the past two years than \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. what had anticipated  
B. had expected  
C. had been expected  
D. that what had been expected
22. A microscope can reveal vastly more detail \_\_\_\_\_ is visible to the naked eye.  
A. than  
B. that  
C. which  
D. what
23. He claims to be an expert in astronomy, but in actual fact he is quite ignorant on the subject. \_\_\_\_\_ he knows about it is out of date and inaccurate.  
A. What little

- B. So much  
C. How much  
D. So little
24. Scientists believe the first inhabitants of the Americas arrived by crossing the land bridge that connected Siberia and \_\_\_\_\_ more than 10,000 years ago.  
A. this is Alaska now  
B. Alaska is now  
C. is now Alaska  
D. what is now Alaska
25. The first people to live in \_\_\_\_\_ Hawaii were the Polynesians, who sailed there in large canoes from other Pacific Islands about 2,000 years ago.  
A. now where is  
B. what is now  
C. it is now  
D. now this is
26. \_\_\_\_\_ touching in O. Henry's stories is the gallantry with which ordinary people struggle to maintain their dignity.  
A. Most is  
B. It mostly is  
C. That is most  
D. What is most
27. With the introduction of the electric computer, there are no complicated problems \_\_\_\_\_ can be solved.  
A. that  
B. as  
C. but

D. which

28. There are very few rules of grammar \_\_\_\_\_; the exception proves the rule.

A. that are not with exception

B. but have exceptions

C. not having exception to them

D. not with exception to them

29. \_\_\_\_\_ is generally accepted, economical growth is determined by the smooth development of production.

A. What

B. That

C. It

D. As

30. In Norway, \_\_\_\_\_ is a Baltic country, you can see the mid-night sun.

A. which

B. where

C. in which

D. that

31. In some countries, \_\_\_\_\_ are called "public schools" are not owned by the state.

A. that

B. which

C. as

D. what

32. In Kuwait, \_\_\_\_\_ there are many oil wells but no rivers, fresh water had to be brought in boats from 100 miles away.

A. which



- B. where  
C. that  
D. what
33. In some countries, \_\_\_\_\_ is called "equality" does not really mean equal rights for all people.  
A. which  
B. what  
C. that  
D. one

#### 2.4 单项选择(关系副词用法)

34. I know of a number of occasions \_\_\_\_\_ people died from water pollution.  
A. which  
B. when  
C. where  
D. while
35. There can't be any life on Venus, \_\_\_\_\_ the temperature is as high as 900 °F.  
A. which  
B. when  
C. where  
D. there
36. The reason \_\_\_\_\_ he died was lack of medical care.  
A. which  
B. for that  
C. as  
D. why
37. He told us how he dealt with the self-interest of countries

to bring them into a kind of international accord \_\_\_\_\_ everyone seemed to benefit.

- A. where
- B. which
- C. that
- D. what

38. Although he knew little about the large amount of work done in the field, he succeeded \_\_\_\_\_ other more well-informed experimenters failed.

- A. which
- B. that
- C. what
- D. where

39. We may encounter situations \_\_\_\_\_ this principle cannot be applied.

- A. where
- B. which
- C. what
- D. as

40. This is the shop \_\_\_\_\_ I often speak to you.

- A. where
- B. which
- C. of which
- D. in which

41. This is the shop \_\_\_\_\_ I often buy foodstuff.

- A. where
- B. which
- C. of which
- D. to which

42. When you read the book, you'd better make a mark \_\_\_\_\_ you have any questions.
- A. at which
  - B. where
  - C. the place where
  - D. in which

**2.5 把下列简单句合并成定语从句(介词 + 关系词)。**

43. He is the man and I think you can depend on him.
44. We assume that the meanings of these underwater sounds are similar to those sounds on land and we are familiar with the sounds on land.
45. Agriculture was a step in human progress and subsequently there was not anything comparable to it until our own machine age.
46. When television was first introduced, it would affect society to the extent and the extent could not have been foreseen.
47. It is useful to be able to predict the extent and to the extent a price change will affect supply and demand.
48. Public demonstrations are an effective means and by the means the people can bring social inequalities to the attention of government officials.
49. Americans regard education as the means and by this means the inequalities among individuals are to be erased and by this means every desirable end is to be achieved.
50. A frequent criticism of most online companies has been the snail's pace and at this pace they deliver their products.

51. The pressure from spending in turn determines the ease and with ease prices increase.

**2.6 单项选择(介词 + 关系词)**

52. When television was first introduced, the extent \_\_\_\_\_ it would affect society could not have been foreseen.  
A. what  
B. to which  
C. to that  
D. which
53. TV's influence should be measured not only in terms of immediate change in behavior, but also by the extent \_\_\_\_\_ it develops certain views of life.  
A. to which  
B. so that  
C. in which  
D. with which
54. It was luck again, according to Nina, that brought her the role in Mute Wife \_\_\_\_\_ she is best known.  
A. as which  
B. which  
C. for which  
D. to which
55. Many critics agree that the novel is an art form \_\_\_\_\_ women excel.  
A. in which  
B. to which  
C. of which  
D. by which

56. He is the man \_\_\_\_\_ I think you can depend.  
A. in whom  
B. on who  
C. with whom  
D. on whom
57. The goals \_\_\_\_\_ he had fought all his life no longer seemed important to him  
A. against which  
B. for which  
C. which  
D. for that
58. Public demonstrations are an effective means \_\_\_\_\_ the people can bring social inequalities to the attention of government officials.  
A. by this  
B. with which  
C. by which  
D. and which
59. We assume that the meanings of these underwater sounds are similar to those \_\_\_\_\_ we are familiar on land.  
A. to which  
B. with whom  
C. with that  
D. with which
60. Dolphins might be trained to cooperate with fishermen and help them by finding, tracking, herding, or even catching fish—\_\_\_\_\_ activities dolphins are expert.  
A. at all of these  
B. in all of which

- C. all of which  
D. in all of what
61. About a thousand species of animals are in danger of extinction, and the rate \_\_\_\_\_ they are being destroyed has increased.  
A. which  
B. that  
C. what  
D. at which
62. A frequent criticism of most online companies has been the snail's pace \_\_\_\_\_ they deliver their products.  
A. in that  
B. at what  
C. at which  
D. which
63. The buzzard (秃鹰) can watch high in the sky the ground for signs of the waste and the dead animals \_\_\_\_\_ it feeds.  
A. which  
B. on what  
C. in which  
D. on which
64. She spent all evening talking about her latest book, \_\_\_\_\_ none of us had ever heard.  
A. in that  
B. in which  
C. of what  
D. of which
65. Agriculture was a step in human progress \_\_\_\_\_ which

- subsequently there was not anything comparable until our own machine age.
- A. to
  - B. for
  - C. in
  - D. from
66. The pressure from spending in turn determines the ease \_\_\_\_\_ prices increase.
- A. by which
  - B. with that
  - C. with which
  - D. what
67. Oil, \_\_\_\_\_ there are several different types, is used for many purposes by countries all over the world.
- A. which
  - B. in which
  - C. by which
  - D. of which
68. Many countries face some serious problems of land use, \_\_\_\_\_ result from population growth and the demands of modern technological living.
- A. most which
  - B. which most
  - C. of most which
  - D. most of which
69. It is useful to be able to predict the extent \_\_\_\_\_ which a price change will affect supply and demand.
- A. from
  - B. with

- C. to  
D. for
70. By bringing about a great leap in the speed and ease  
..... information moves from place to place, the Internet has greatly accelerated the rate of scientific and technological changes.  
A. with which  
B. which  
C. to which  
D. by which
71. We need a chairman .....,  
A. for whom everyone has confidence  
B. in whom everyone has confidence  
C. who everyone has confidence of  
D. whom everyone has confidence on
72. A survey was carried out on the death rate of new-born babies in that region, \_\_\_\_\_ the results were surprising.  
A. as  
B. which  
C. what  
D. of which
73. The classroom is a natural environment \_\_\_\_\_ and apply the concept of community service to reduce local crime problems.  
A. which to introduce  
B. to introduce  
C. in which to introduce  
D. which to introduce
74. The science of medicine, \_\_\_\_\_ progress has been very



rapid lately, is perhaps the most important of all the sciences.

- A. in which
- B. to which
- C. with which
- D. which

## 2.7 翻译下列短文,认真体会关系词前边的介词用法。

75. A friend is not just someone *to whom* you say "Hello". A friend is a tender shoulder *on which* you can softly cry. A friend is a well *into which* you can pour all your troubles down. A friend is a hand which pulls you up from darkness and despair when all your other "so-called friends" have helped to put you there. A true friend is an ally who can't be moved or bought, a voice which keeps your name alive when others have forgot. But most of all a friend is a heart, a strong and sturdy wall, for from the hearts of friends there comes the greatest love of all!
76. When we indulge in self-pity, we rob the poor and the suffering of that which is theirs by right and waste it on ourselves, *to whom* it does more harm than good.

## 2.8 分析下列 *That* 引导的是定语从句还是名词从句,并译成汉语。

77. Studies show *that* the things *that* contribute most to a sense of happiness cannot be bought, such as a good family life, friendship and work satisfaction.
78. The ruler of an ancient kingdom wanted to disprove the rumor *that* their wives ruled the men of his domain. He

had all the males in his kingdom brought before him and warned *that* any man *that* did not tell the truth would be punished severely. Then he asked all the men *that* obeyed their wives' directions and advice to step to the left side of the hall. All the men did so but one little man *that* moved to the right. "It's good to see," said the king, "*that* we have one real man in the kingdom. Tell these chicken-hearted dunces (傻瓜) why you alone among them stand on the right side of the hall." "Your Majesty," came the reply in a squealing (长而尖锐的声音) voice, "it is because before I left home my wife told me to keep out of crowds."

79. The mere fact *that* most people believe nuclear war would be madness does not mean that it will not occur.
80. An evidence *that* life may have existed on earth 3.8 billions years ago has been discovered in these ancient rocks.
81. When reports came into London Zoo *that* a wild puma had been spotted forty-five miles south of London, they were not taken seriously.

## 2.9 分析下列定语从句的结构,并翻译成汉语。(各种复杂定语从句)

82. If there is anything in the world that a young man should be more grateful for than another, it is the poverty which necessitates starting life under very great disadvantage.
83. One of the illusions of life is that the present hour is not the critical, decisive hour. Write it on your heart that

- every day is the best day of the year. He only is rich who owns the day, and no one owns the day who allows it to be invaded with worry, fret, and anxiety. Finish every day, and be done with it. You have done what you could.
84. Every December we choose ten trends that we think will be the most important influences in the business of technology in the coming year.
85. There are things you would love to hear but you will never hear it from the person from whom you would like to hear it, but don't be deaf to hear it from the person who says it with heart.
86. The 20th century will not be remembered as the era when space was conquered, or the power of the atom harnessed, but that in which were made the first machines having intelligence.
87. Customs inspectors are hard to fool. They see scores of travelers every day. They soon learn how to pick out a person who may be smuggling something across the border. The clue may be in the way the person walks. Or it may be in the way he talks. Or it may be just a strange feeling the inspector has that makes him suspect a person of smuggling.

## 2.10 单项选择

88. Many students face problems when they have to study a subject \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. that they think it is difficult  
 B. that they think is difficult  
 C. which they think that is difficult

- D. they think it is difficult
89. He has made a discovery, \_\_\_\_\_ of great importance to the progress of science and technology.
- A. I think which is
- B. which I think is
- C. which I think it is
- D. of which I think it is
90. They pointed out the damage \_\_\_\_\_ had been done by last night's storm.
- A. which they supposed
- B. which they supposed that
- C. they supposed that
- D. that they supposed which
91. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ we supposed was drowned came back.
- A. who
- B. whom
- C. as
- D. which
92. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ we supposed drowned came back.
- A. what
- B. that
- C. as
- D. which
93. Water enters into a great variety of chemical reactions, \_\_\_\_\_ have been mentioned in previous pages.
- A. a few of what
- B. a few of which
- C. a few of that
- D. a few of them

94. \_\_\_\_\_ shrewd people \_\_\_\_\_ he described in his novel are to be found everywhere.  
A. Such/like  
B. Such/as  
C. So/like  
D. So/as
95. The Great Wall is the place \_\_\_\_\_ almost all tourists would like to visit when they come to Beijing.  
A. where  
B. which  
C. of which  
D. in which
96. He didn't have a good command of spoken English, \_\_\_\_\_ made it difficult for him to get a good job.  
A. that  
B. which  
C. what  
D. this
97. Collin's struggle to make a place for herself in ballet is the kind of life story \_\_\_\_\_ a fascinating novel might be written.  
A. of that  
B. about which  
C. by whom  
D. for whom
98. The quality of teaching should be measured by the degree \_\_\_\_\_ the students' potentiality is developed.  
A. of which  
B. with which

- C. in which  
D. to which
99. Basic research provides the capital fund of scientific knowledge \_\_\_\_\_ which the applied researchers draw to give society a rich rate of interest.  
A. on  
B. out  
C. up  
D. back
100. Hiram Revels, the first Black member of the United States Senate, served as senator from Mississippi, an office \_\_\_\_\_ he was elected in 1870.  
A. which  
B. to which  
C. and which  
D. at which
101. They will move into the new house next Friday, \_\_\_\_\_ it will be completely furnished.  
A. by the time  
B. by which time  
C. by that time  
D. by this time
102. The tall rectangular buildings may well give way to a more complex and exciting shape providing areas \_\_\_\_\_ which the individual can fully identify himself.  
A. to  
B. for  
C. with  
D. by

103. The professor can hardly find sufficient grounds \_\_\_\_\_ his argument in favor of the new theory.  
A. which to base on  
B. on which to base  
C. to base on which  
D. which to be based on
104. We can separate oil into the chemical compounds \_\_\_\_\_ it is composed.  
A. of which  
B. with which  
C. in which  
D. from which
105. We have found a useful compound \_\_\_\_\_ we can separate some important elements.  
A. of which  
B. with which  
C. in which  
D. from which
106. I've kept up a friendship with a girl who I was at school \_\_\_\_\_ twenty years ago.  
A. about  
B. since  
C. till  
D. with
107. This is an exciting area of study, and one \_\_\_\_\_ which new applications are being discovered almost daily.  
A. from  
B. by  
C. in

D. through

108. Noise in a room may be reduced by carpeting, draperies, and upholstered furniture, \_\_\_\_\_ absorb sound.

A. which they all

B. of them all

C. all of which

D. of all which

109. After the First World War, the author Anais Nin became interested in the art movement known as Surrealism and in psychoanalysis, both \_\_\_\_\_ her novels and short stories.

A. in which the influence

B. of which influenced

C. to have influence

D. its influence in

110. I don't think the number of people \_\_\_\_\_ this happens is very large.

A. when

B. to whom

C. that

D. of which

111. Anthony Jason, \_\_\_\_\_ Louis succeeded in the experiment, was a friend of mine.

A. with the help from whom

B. with whose help

C. with the help of his

D. with his help

112. He's written a book \_\_\_\_\_ the name I've completely



- forgotten.
- A. whose
  - B. which
  - C. of which
  - D. that
113. Watercolor provides a brilliant transparency and freshness, \_\_\_\_\_ it allows extraordinarily free brushwork.
- A. that
  - B. during
  - C. which
  - D. and
114. Mahalia Jackson, \_\_\_\_\_ combined powerful vitality with great dignity, was one of the best-known gospel singers in the United States.
- A. it was her singing
  - B. which songs
  - C. who sang
  - D. whose singing
115. Mr. Jones, \_\_\_\_\_ John was working, was very generous about overtime payment.
- A. for whom
  - B. for who
  - C. whom
  - D. for that
116. This is the faith \_\_\_\_\_ I come back.
- A. in which
  - B. with which
  - C. on which
  - D. in that

117. It was he \_\_\_\_\_ we had the greatest faith.  
A. in whom  
B. that  
C. with whom  
D. who
118. Arthur Miller's play *Death of a Salesman* is the tragic story of a man destroyed by his own hollow values and those of the society \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. he lives in which  
B. in which he lives  
C. which in he lives  
D. in that he lives
119. In the United States, a primary election is a method \_\_\_\_\_ voters select the nominees for public office.  
A. in that  
B. by which  
C. by those  
D. is that
120. Emily Dickinson's garden was a place \_\_\_\_\_ great inspiration for her poems.  
A. that she drew  
B. by drawing her  
C. from which she drew  
D. drawn from which
121. We moved to the new house in the suburbs so that the kids would have a garden \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. in which to play  
B. to play with  
C. to play

- D. where to play
122. He showed me a book, \_\_\_\_\_ I could tell that it was pretty old.
- A. which cover  
B. of which cover  
C. the cover which  
D. from the cover of which
123. Solomon was diligent, responsible and hardworking, \_\_\_\_\_ he was promoted from a clerk to a manager.
- A. for which  
B. which  
C. for  
D. that
124. "Did the audience participate in the party?"  
"Yes, the actors \_\_\_\_\_ to involve the audience were successful."
- A. whom it was the function  
B. of which the function was  
C. whose function it was  
D. whose were the function
125. The doctors all blamed the irresponsible boy \_\_\_\_\_ to protect the little girl.
- A. it was he that was  
B. whose duty was it  
C. it was whose duty  
D. whose duty it was
126. The project requires more labor than \_\_\_\_\_ because it is extremely difficult.
- A. has been put in

- B. have been put in  
C. being put in  
D. to be put in
127. He often sat in a small bar drinking considerably more than \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. he was in good health  
B. his good health was  
C. his health was good  
D. was good for his health
128. The costs of distribution and sales make up a large part of prices that \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. all products are paid for  
B. are paid for all products  
C. for all products paid  
D. for which all products paid
129. Without facts we can't form a worthwhile opinion for we need to have factual knowledge \_\_\_\_\_ our thinking.  
A. upon which to base  
B. which to base upon  
C. which to be based on  
D. to which to be based
130. Many people are unaware that prairies once existed \_\_\_\_\_ is now the state of Michigan.  
A. in what  
B. in that  
C. in which  
D. where
131. His great grandmother was among the last to settle in

- \_\_\_\_\_ is now the famous mountain resort.
- A. that
  - B. where
  - C. which
  - D. what
132. More middle-aged persons suffer from heart trouble than \_\_\_\_\_
- A. it generally is realized
  - B. is generally realized
  - C. generally it is realized
  - D. generally is realized
133. The Social Security Retirement Program is made up of two trust funds, \_\_\_\_\_ could go penniless by next year.
- A. the larger one
  - B. the larger of which
  - C. the largest one
  - D. the largest of which
134. Living in the central Australian desert has its problems, \_\_\_\_\_ obtaining water is not the least.
- A. of which
  - B. for which
  - C. as
  - D. whose
135. Poverty is also threatening the company's most valuable resource, its staff, \_\_\_\_\_
- A. who are increasingly being lured
  - B. which is increasingly being lured
  - C. lured increasingly
  - D. to be increasingly lured

136. So quickly are science and technology advancing \_\_\_\_\_ is a possibility today may be a reality tomorrow.  
A. which  
B. what  
C. that which  
D. that what
137. \_\_\_\_\_ is known to all, gases expand and contract with the increase and decrease of temperature.  
A. Which  
B. As  
C. That  
D. It
138. Obviously there was little certainty \_\_\_\_\_ the chairman would agree to this proposal.  
A. which  
B. why  
C. what  
D. that
139. "Do you like the book your father gave you?"  
"Very much. It's exactly \_\_\_\_\_ I wanted."  
A. one which  
B. that  
C. one what  
D. the one
140. He never sells such books \_\_\_\_\_ are considered harmful to the readers.  
A. that  
B. as  
C. which

- D. what
141. Physics is the present-day equivalent of \_\_\_\_\_ used to be called natural philosophy, \_\_\_\_\_ which most of present-day science arose.
- A. what ... from  
B. that ... from  
C. which ... of  
D. what ... with
142. Many birds have feathers \_\_\_\_\_ with their surroundings.
- A. colors blend  
B. that colors blend  
C. whose colors blend  
D. of which the colors that blend
143. Civil rights are the freedoms and rights \_\_\_\_\_ as a member of a community, state, or nation.
- A. may have a person  
B. a person who may have  
C. a person may have  
D. and a person may have
144. The computer has dramatically affected \_\_\_\_\_ photographic lenses are constructed.
- A. is the way  
B. that the way  
C. which way do  
D. the way
145. Despite its wide range of styles and instrumentation, country music has certain common features \_\_\_\_\_ its own special character.

- A. give it that  
B. that give it  
C. that give  
D. that gives it to
146. Mango trees, \_\_\_\_\_ densely covered with glossy leaves and bear small fragrant flowers, grow rapidly and can attain heights of up to 90 feet.  
A. whose  
B. which are  
C. are when  
D. which
147. The computer has brought about surprising technological changes \_\_\_\_\_ we organize and produce information.  
A. in a way  
B. in the way  
C. in that way  
D. in no way
148. In the early twentieth century, the "Model T" automobile was mass-produced and sold at a price \_\_\_\_\_ could afford.  
A. the average person who  
B. that the average person who  
C. and the average person  
D. the average person
149. There are many copper mines in the state of Arizona, \_\_\_\_\_ contributes significantly to the state's economy.  
A. a fact  
B. which fact



- 

## 2.11 辨别改错

153. Members of a nation's foreign service represent that country's interests abroad and report on the conditions, trends, and policies of the country which they are stationed.
154. Many species can communicate an amazing amount of information via sound, information which both the life of an individual and the continued existence of the

species may depend.

155. Most of the food what elephants eat is brought to their  
A B C  
mouths by their trunks.  
D
156. It is perhaps not an exaggeration to say that we shall  
A  
soon be trusting our health, wealth and happiness to el-  
B  
ements with whom very names the general public are  
C D  
unfamiliar.
157. Traditionally, ethnographers and linguists have paid lit-  
A  
tle attention to cultural interpretations given to silence,  
B  
or to the types of social contexts in which tends to oc-  
C D  
cur.
158. Light rays what enter the eye must be focused onto a  
A B  
point on the retina in order for a clear visual image  
C  
to form.  
D
159. Carson McCullers was only 23 when she published her  
A B  
first novel, *The Heart Is a Lonely Hunter* for what she  
C  
received much acclaim.  
D
160. A mirage is an atmospheric optical illusion in what an  
A B  
observer sees a nonexistent body of water or an image  
C

of some object.

D

161. Humus, a substance found in soil, is soft and spongy and enables plant roots to send out tiny hairs through that they absorb water and food.

A

B

C

D

162. They pointed out the damage which they supposed that had been done by last night's storm.

A

B

C

D

163. There are many valuable services which the public are willing to pay for, but which does not bring a return in money to the community.

A

B

C

D

164. Mercury's velocity is so much greater than the Earth's that it completes more than four revolutions around the Sun in the time that takes the Earth to complete one.

A

B

C

D

165. Vaccines for some rare diseases are given only to persons which risk exposure to the disease.

A

B

C

D

166. This is the most important respect which civilized man can be distinguished from primitive communities.

A

B

C

D

167. Doppler radar can be used to determine the direction which the particles of a cloud are moving.

A

B

C

D

- 103

- 104

第二章 定语从句练习答案

2.1-2.4

1-5: CBBDD 6-10: ACCAB 11-15: BCCBC 16-20: ACC-  
CD 21-25: CAADB 26-30: DCBDA 31-35: DBBBC 36-  
40: DADAC 41-42: AB

2.5

43. He is the man on whom I think you can depend.
44. We assume that the meanings of these underwater sounds are similar to those with which we are familiar on land.
45. Agriculture was a step in human progress to which subsequently there was not anything comparable until our own machine age.
46. When television was first introduced, the extent to which it would affect society could not have been foreseen.
47. It is useful to be able to predict the extent to which a price change will affect supply and demand.
48. Public demonstrations are an effective means by which the people can bring social inequalities to the attention of government officials.
49. Americans regard education as the means by which the inequalities among individuals are to be erased and by this means every desirable end is to be achieved.
50. A frequent criticism of most online companies has been the snail's pace at which they deliver their products.
51. The pressure from spending in turn determines the ease

with which prices increase.

## 2.6

52-55: BACA 56-60: DBCDB 61-65: DCDDA  
66-70: CDDCA 71-74: BDCA

## 2.7

75. 朋友,不仅仅是一个见了面说声“你好”的人。朋友,是你能依偎着轻轻哭泣的肩膀。朋友,是能容纳你所有烦恼的一口深井。朋友,是当你被那些“所谓的朋友”抛弃时,把你从黑暗和绝望中救出来的一只手。真正的朋友,是赶不走也收买不了的支持者,是一个永远回荡着你的名字的声音,即使其他人已将你遗忘。最重要的是,朋友是一颗心,一堵坚实的墙,而正是因为有了这些朋友的一片心,才使我们拥有伟大的爱!

76. 如果我们沉溺于自怨自怜中,就等于是把本该属于穷人和悲痛之人的权利浪费在我们自己身上,这对我们实在是百弊而无一利。

## 2.8

77. Studies show that... 宾语从句; the things that contribute... 定语从句。

译文:研究表明,真正让我们感到幸福的是金钱无法买到的,比如:美满的家庭生活、纯真的友谊和工作上的称心如意。

78. The rumor that... 同位语从句; warned that... 宾语从句; any man that... 定语从句; all the men that... 定语从句; one little man that... 定语从句; see that we have... 宾语从句。

译文:古时候,有位国王,他想证明,在他统治的国度里并非向人们谣传的那样:妇人统治丈夫。他把王国里所有的男人都召到跟前,并警告说,如果谁不说实话将遭到严厉的惩罚。然

后,他让所有听从夫人命令的男人站到王宫的左侧。结果所有的男人都去了左边,只有一个矮小的男人站在右边。“太好了,”国王说,“我们的国度里还有一个真正的男人。告诉那些胆小鬼们,你为什么站在右边。”“陛下,”他尖着嗓子说,“微臣出门之前,夫人有令,人多的地方不能去。”

79. 同位语从句。

译文:尽管大多数人认为核战争是愚蠢的行为,但这并不意味着核战不会爆发。

80. 同位语从句

译文:生命早在 38 亿年前就已经存在的证据在这些古老的岩石中被发现了。

81. 同位语从句

译文:在伦敦以南 45 英里处发现有一只美洲狮出没的通知送到伦敦动物园时,人们对此并没有重视。

## 2.9

82. 对于青年人来说,如果世上真的有什么事物是他最为应该感激的话,那么就是贫穷,因为贫穷能促使他在非常恶劣的环境下来开创生活。

83. 在生活中,我们往往有一种错觉:认为眼下的每一个时刻并不是关键的、决定性的时刻。其实,应该牢记“每天都是一年中最好的一天。”拥有了今天的人才是一个富有的人。如果是让担心、焦虑和烦恼充斥着自己每一天,那就意味着你浪费了这一天。过好每一天,收获每一天。做好该做的。

分析: *no one* owns the day *who allows it to be invaded with worry, fret, and anxiety*. 这里的定语从句修饰 *no one*。

84. 在每年的十二月,我们要选出对来年的科技产业将会产生巨大影响的十大趋势。

85. 有些你想听的东西,可能永远无法从你希望能说出它的那



个人口中听到,但是也不要对那些真心说出的话充耳不闻。

86. 20 世纪不会被人们看成是征服了太空或是利用了原子动力的世纪,而是被看成制造了首批智能化机器的世纪。

分析:第一个定语从句 when space was conquered, or the power of the atom harnessed 先行词是 the era。第二个定语从句 in which were made the first machines having intelligence 先行词也是 the era,不过为了避免重复,用 that 指代了 the era。所以,这两个定语从句由 but 连接,修饰同一个先行词 the era。还要注意,第二个定语从句 in which were made the first machines having intelligence 是一个全部倒装的句子,正常语序应是:in which the first machines having intelligence were made,并可进一步还原成:The first machines having intelligence were made in the era(which)。

87. 海关检查人员可不是好骗的。他们每天要检查成千上万的游客。他们很快就能学会怎样识别那些从边境走私的人。线索可能是那些人走路的样子,也可能是说话的方式,或者只是凭直觉使他怀疑某人是在走私。

分析:it may be just a strange feeling the inspector has that makes him suspect a person of smuggling. 是一个双层定语从句。

## 2.10

88-90: BBA 91-95: ABBBB 96-100: BBDAB

101-105: BCBAD 106-110: DCCBB 111-115: BCDDA

116-120: BABBC 121-125: ADACD 126-130: ADBAA

131-135: DBBAB 136-140: DBDDB 141-145: ACCDB

146-150: BBDBD 151-152: DB

## 2.11

153. C/in which

- 154. C/on which
- 155. B/that 或 which
- 156. C/with whose
- 157. D/ in which it tends
- 158. A/that 或 which
- 159. C/for which
- 160. B/in which
- 161. C/through which
- 162. C/that 去掉
- 163. C/do
- 164. C/that it
- 165. B/who
- 166. A/in which
- 167. B/in which
- 168. D/which
- 169. B/by which
- 170. B/in which
- 171. A/that 或 which
- 172. C/at which
- 173. C/to which
- 174. B/by which
- 175. A/at which
- 176. B/by which
- 177. C/at which
- 178. B/which
- 179. C/at which
- 180. C/in which
- 181. D/which

## 状语从句

### 23. 状语从句本质

英语中的状语从句有九大类,分别可表示:时间、地点、原因、结果、目的、条件、让步、比较、方式。尽管数目较多,但理解并不难。

从本质上来讲,状语从句就是用不同的连接词将几个分句连接起来,以表达分句之间特定的逻辑关系。所以,掌握引导九类状语从句的有关连接词的用法是学习状语从句的关键。只要记住连接词就能够识别是何种状语从句,从而正确分析句子结构并理解句子意思。

状语从句的引导词主要有:(它们的用法后文将详细论述)

状语从句种类	常用连接词	特殊连接词
时间状语从句	when, while, as, before, af- ter, since, till, until, as soon as	1. 一些时间名词: the moment, the in- stant, the minute; the day, next time, every time 2. 一些副词: instantly immediately, di- rectly 3. 固定搭配的连词: no sooner... than, hardly... when, scarcely... when
地点状语从句	where	wherever, anywhere, everywhere
原因状语从句	because, as, for, since	seeing that, considering that, now that, given that, in that, inasmuch as, inso- much as
目的状语从句	so that, in order that, that	lest, for fear that, in case, in the hope that, on purpose that, for the purpose that, to the end that
结果状语从句	so... that, so that, such... that	such that, to the degree that, to the ex- tent that, to such a degree that, to such an extent that.
条件状语从句	if, unless	suppose, supposing, providing, provid- ed, (特别关注: supposed, provide 不用 作条件从句的连词) on condition that, so long as, as long as.
让步状语从句	although, though, even though, even if	while(一般用在句首), as(用于倒装结 构), whatever, whoever, whichever, how- ever, whenever, wherever, whether... or..., as adj. as + 主谓结构用在句首
比较状语从句	as, than	其他比较句型: the more..., the more...; just as..., so...; A is to B what/as C is to D; no more... than; not A so much as B/not so much A as B
方式状语从句	as, the way,	

## 24. 时间状语从句

### ► 1. when + 短暂动词

1) 意思相当于: at that time(在…时刻), 从句谓语动词通常是短暂动词, 表示某一时刻的动作。

- a. I'll speak to him when he *arrives*.
- b. I'll tell him about it when he *comes* back.
- c. When I *arrived*, he was talking on the phone.
- d. When I *got* there, he had already left.

从句也可接延续动词, 这时从句往往用过去进行时态, 表示某一时间段内发生的动作。例如:

- e. The doorbell rang when I *was telephoning*. 在我打电话的时候, 突然门铃响了。

2) 请注意 when 引导时间状语从句时, 主句和从句的时态搭配, 以及不同时态表达的主句动作和从句动作的时间先后关系。例如:

例句	主从句时态	用法解释
I'll speak to him when he <i>arrives</i> . I'll tell him about it when he <i>comes</i> back.	主句将来时 + 从句现在时	时间从句中要用一般现在时表示将来。
I'll give you a call when I <i>have finished</i> the work. 工作做完后, 我就给你打电话。 I'll go when I <i>have had</i> my dinner. 我吃完饭就去。	主句将来时 + 从句现在完成时	* 关注: 这种时态搭配是一般读者不注意的。从句中用完成时态是为了强调: 在从句动作结束了之后, 主句动作才开始发生。如果是: I'll go when I have my dinner. 意思则是: “我吃着饭的同时就出去了。”我是端着碗出门的, 边走边吃。

例句	主从句时态	用法解释
<p>I <b>started</b> my dinner when he <b>left</b> / <b>had left</b>. 他走了之后,我才开始吃晚饭。</p> <p>He <b>left</b> when I <b>got</b> / <b>had got</b> there. 我到了以后,他才离开。</p>	主句过去时 + 从句过去时或过去完成时	若主从句都用一般过去时,则表示从句动作先发生。所以,从句还可以用过去完成时。
<p>I <b>had started</b> my dinner when he <b>left</b>. 他走的时候,我已经开始吃晚饭了。</p> <p>He <b>had already left</b> when I <b>got</b> there. 我到的时候,他已经离开了。</p>	主句过去完成时 + 从句过去时	与上述相反,若表达主句动作先发生,主句须用过去完成时。

3) 也可用 **whenever**“无论何时”引导时间状语从句。例如:

- a. **Whenever** you say “I love you”, mean it. **Whenever** you say “I’m sorry”, look the person right in the eyes. 无论何时说“我爱你”,请真心诚意。无论何时说“对不起”,请看着对方的眼睛。
- b. **Whenever** someone asks you something you don’t want to answer, smile and ask “why do you want to know?” 当别人问而你不想回答时,笑着说“你为什么想知道?”
- c. Smile **whenever** you pick up the phone, for the caller will be able to notice it. 面带微笑地接听电话,因为对方会感觉得到。

## ► 2. While + 延续动词

意思相当于: during that time(在…期间),表示某一时间段内发生的动作,因此,从句谓语动词通常接延续动词。

- a. The phone rang while I was *taking* my bath.
- b. The doorbell rang while we were *watching* TV.
- c. A detective(n. 侦探)arrested a criminal and was about to handcuff (v. 上手铐) him *when* a huge gust(n. 一阵狂风) of wind *blew* the detective's hat off.  
 "Shall I go and fetch it?" the criminal asked. "Do you take me for a fool?" asked the detective. "You wait here *while* I go and get it!"(此句中 go and get 尽管是短暂动词,但两动词连用表示的是在一段期间的活动。)
- d. I was walking along the road \_\_\_\_\_ suddenly someone patted me on the shoulder from behind. (CET-4)  
 A. immediately  
 B. when  
 C. the moment  
 D. while

分析:因为从句的动词 patted 是一个短暂动作,故选 B。

### ► 3. Until

1) 当主句谓语动词是延续动词时,通常用肯定形式。例如:

- a. *Wait* until he comes back. (wait 为延续性动词)
- b. We'll *stay* here till it stops raining. (stay 为延续性动词)
- c. When I showed my Dad my report card, I said, "Remember, Dad, Thomas Edison got bad grades in school, too."  
 He said, "Fine, *stay* in your room until you invent the light bulb(灯泡)."
- d. Until I came back, he *was waiting* for me at my home.

2) 若主句谓语动词是短暂动词的,则要用否定形式。这就是我们常说的“not...until...(直到…才…)”的结构。

- a. I *did not realize* how special my mother was until I became an adult. 直到我长大成人以后,我才真正懂得母亲是多么地不平凡。
- b. One will *never realize* how much and how little he knows until he starts talking. 人们只有在与入进行交谈时才知道自己到底懂得多少。
- c. Ice cream *did not reach* America until about the middle of the eighteenth century.
- d. I *didn't go* to bed until 12 o'clock last night.
- e. He *didn't leave* the office until his boss came back.

3) “not...until...”有四种不同句式,请看下例:

**A. 正常结构:**

- a. The little boy *didn't smile until* he saw his mother.
- b. The exact time of dying was *not of great importance until* recently.

**B. until 置于句首:**

- a. *Until* he saw his mother, the little boy *didn't* smile.
- b. *Until* recently the exact time of dying was *not of great importance*. 直到最近,确定死亡的确切时间才变得尤其重要。(注意翻译)

**C. 倒装结构:**

- a. *Not until* he saw his mother *did* the little boy smile. (主句倒装)
- b. *Not until* recently *was* the exact time of dying *of great importance*.

**D. 强调结构:**

- a. *It was not until* he saw his mother *that* the little boy smiled.
- b. *It was not until* recently *that* the exact time of dying *was*



*of great importance.*

注意:

1) until 后接的动词常是短暂性动词。

2) 在 not until 倒装结构中,需部分倒装的是主句中的谓语动词,而非从句中的谓语动词。

a. *Not until she had arrived home did she remember her appointment with the doctor.*

3) 倒装结构演化成强调结构时,则主句谓语不再采用倒装形式。

a. *Not until she had arrived home did she remember her appointment with the doctor.*

b. *It was not until she had arrived home that she remembered her appointment with the doctor.*

#### ► 4. 表示“一…就…”

表示“一…就…”的连词有:

1) as soon as, once, the minute, the moment, the instant, immediately, directly, instantly。这些连词的用法和句式结构是一样的,主从句时态一般一致。请看例句:

a. We will leave *as soon as* it stops raining. 雨一停,我们就动身走。

b. It began to rain *as soon as* I arrived home. 我刚到家,天就开始下起雨来。

c. It began to rain *immediately* I arrived home.

d. It began to rain *the moment* I arrived home.

e. The doorbell rang *as soon as* we began having dinner.

f. Don't trust those who leave their friends *the moment* they get into difficulty!

g. You see the lightning \_\_\_\_\_ it happens, but you hear the thunder later. (97-1 CET-4)

- A. the instant
- B. for an instant
- C. on the instant
- D. in an instant

分析:因为主从句动作紧接着发生,表示“一…就…”,故正确答案为:A。

2) *hardly/scarcely... when, no sooner... than*。主句多用过去完成时,且常倒装,从句用一般过去时。它与 *as soon as* 等的从句、主句互换。请看例句:

- a. *No sooner had I arrived home than* it began to rain.
- b. *Hardly / Scarcely had I arrived home when* it began to rain.
- c. No sooner *had we begun* having dinner than the doorbell rang.

### ►5. 表示时间的短语引导的时间状语从句

有一些表示时间的短语也可当作连词来用,引导时间状语从句: *next time, by the time, every time, each time, the day, the week* 等。

- a. *The day* he returned, his father was already dead. 在他回来的那天,父亲就已经去世了。
- b. *Next time* you come, remember to bring along your sister.
- c. *Every time* I listen to your advice, I get into trouble.
- d. In the classic children's tale, the puppet Pinocchio's nose grows longer *every time* he tells a lie. 在经典的儿童童

话故事中,小木偶皮诺曹每次一说谎,鼻子就要长长。

关注: *by the time*

*by the time* 意思是“在…之前”,强调的是“一个动作在另外一个动作之前已经完成 (one event is completed before another event)”,因此, *by the time* 后边接从句,而与其搭配的主句要用完成时态。注意下句时态搭配:

<i>by the time</i> 与两种完成时搭配	
a. By the time they <i>arrived</i> , we <i>had already left</i> . 那天他们到的时候,我们已经先走了。	从句中 <i>arrived</i> 表示过去动作,对应的主句用过去完成时。
b. By the time they <i>arrive</i> , we <i>will have already left</i> . 一会儿等他们来的时候,我们就将离开了。	从句中 <i>arrive</i> 表示将来动作,对应的主句用将来完成时。

## 25. 地点状语从句

► 1. 地点状语从句通常由 *where* 引导,并且一般放在主句后边。

- a. Stay *where* you are. 呆在原处别动。
- b. Generally, air will be heavily polluted *where there are factories*. 一般在有工厂的地方空气污染都会很严重。
- c. A driver should slow down *where* there are schools. 在有学校的地方,司机应缓行。

► 2. 也可由 *wherever*, *anywhere* 和 *everywhere* 引导地点状语从句。

- a. *Wherever* he happens to be, Clint can make himself at home. 无论在什么地方, Clint 总是无拘无束。

- b. Everywhere they appeared, there were ovations. 他们  
在哪里都受到热烈欢迎。

► 3. 地点状语从句若放在句首, 往往失去地点含义, 翻译时  
要灵活处理。

- a. *Wherever there is love*, there is also wealth and success!!  
只要有爱, 就会有成功和财富。

- b. *Where there is pain*, we wish you peace and mercy.  
当你感到痛苦时, 祝福你能保持内心平静安宁并学会宽  
恕。

*Where there is self-doubting*, we wish you a renewed con-  
fidence in your ability to work through them.

当你对自己感到怀疑时, 祝福你重新找回对自己能力的信  
心并奋力开创新局面。

*Where there is tiredness, or exhaustion*, we wish you un-  
derstanding, patience and renewed strength.

当你感到身心疲惫时, 祝福你能理解, 忍耐, 并重新获取力  
量。

*Where there is fear*, we wish you love and courage.  
当你感到恐惧时, 祝福你得到爱和勇气。

## 26. 原因状语从句

### ► 1. 原因状语从句常见连词

我们常用的连词有: because, for, as, since。具体区别在《通  
悟语法》一书中已有详解, 在此不再赘述。

用法	例句
because 语气最强, 只有它才能用来回答 why 的问句。所引出的原因往往是听话人所不知道的或最感兴趣的原因。	My friends dislike me because I'm handsome and successful.
since 表示人们已知的事实, 不须强调的原因。所以常译成“既然……”。通常放在句首。	Since we don't have class tomorrow, why not go out for a picnic? Since you are an English major, I guess you can help me with this sentence.
as 与 since 的用法差不多, 所引出的理由在说话人看来已经很明显, 或已为听话人所熟悉而不须用 because 加以强调。	As Monday is a national holiday, all government offices will be closed.
for 表示推断的理由, 是对前面分句的内容加以解释或说明。	It rained last night, for the ground is wet this morning. 试比较: Because it rained last night, the ground is wet this morning.

## ►2. 用介词表示因果关系

常用的介词: because of, due to (不用在句首), owing to (常用于句首)。因为是介词, 所以后边只能接名词, 而不是从句。请比较:

- We had an accident *because he was careless*. 由于他粗心大意, 我们出了车祸。
- We had an accident *due to his carelessness*. (不能说: ... due to he was careless.)
- Owing to his carelessness* we had an accident

### ► 3. because 的否定转移

在主句是否定的情况下, because 引导的从句的翻译可分为两种情形:

#### 1) 两种理解方式:

- a. I didn't attend the meeting because he **was present**, too.

翻译 1: 因为当时也有他出席, 所以我没有去参加这个会议。

作这种理解时, 原句主句和从句之间应该有一逗号:

I didn't attend the meeting, because he **was present**, too.

否则可以有如下理解方式:

翻译 2: 我出席这次会议并不是因为有他参加。

原句相当于: I attended the meeting, not because he was present, too.

这种形式上是否定主句, 但在意思上是否定原因从句的情形我们称之为否定转移。同样的句子还有:

- b. I did not marry her because I loved her.

翻译 1: 因为我爱她, 所以我决定不跟她结婚。(比如“我”已知患有 cancer, 不结婚是为了她的幸福。)

翻译 2: 我并不是因为爱她才和她结婚。(比如“而是因为她的有钱或其他原因”) = I married her, not because I loved her but for some other reasons.

#### 2) 只能作为否定转移来理解:

- a. I don't study English just because I like to.

只能翻译为: 我学英文并不是因为我喜欢英文。(而是因为其他原因, 比如工作需要)

- b. Certainly I *don't* teach *because teaching is easy for me*.

Teaching is the most difficult of the various ways I have attempted to earn my living. *Nor* do I teach *because I think I know answers, or because I have knowledge I feel*

*compelled to share*. 我选择教书,并不是因为教书对我来说很容易,相反,在我尝试过的众多谋生方式当中,教书对我来说其实是最难的。也并不是因为我自认为自己学识渊博因而想要急切去炫耀,而选择教书。

我们来看一道 TOEFL 听力题:

- c. He doesn't exercise because he *likes* to.  
 A. He likes to exercise by himself.  
 B. He exercises for reasons other than enjoyment.  
 C. He's glad he doesn't have to exercise.  
 D. He doesn't have enough time to exercise.

分析:

doesn't 否定的不是 exercise,而是 because 从句中的 likes,此时 likes 应该重读。正确答案:B。

- d. The conference's purpose is to demonstrate that we're all continuing to focus on the economy as the president promised to do when he came into office and that means *not* sitting around and patting yourself on the back *because of* the unemployment and inflation rates being low. 此次会议的目的就是要证明我们正一直致力于发展经济,这正如我们总统上台执政时所承诺的。我们政府并没有因为较低的失业率和通货膨胀率就无所事事,沾沾自喜。

其他类似的否定转移

这种否定转移不局限于 because 原因从句。一般来说,句中什么词重读就否定什么词。

- e. He won't go to just *any* school.  
 A. He's the only one who won't go with us.  
 B. He just won't go to school.  
 C. He'll probably study in several locations.  
 D. He's particular about where he goes to school.

此句中 any 重读,即表明他并不是随随便便上一个学校就算了,而是对上什么学校是很在乎的(particular)。所以 D 正确。

f. I didn't write that memo to the department chair to *amuse* myself.

A. I wrote a funny letter to department chair.

B. I don't think the department will write me a letter.

C. The department chair was amused by my letter.

D. I wrote to the department chair about a serious matter.

正确答案:D。

g. I *didn't spend* three hours repairing your vacuum so it could sit in the closet. 我花了三小时把吸尘器修理好并不是为了把它放在储藏室不用。

#### ►4. 其他复合连词表示原因

1) seeing (that), now (that), considering (that), given (that)与 since 相近,它们都有“鉴于某个事实,考虑到…”的意思。

a. *Seeing that* it's raining hard, we'll have to stay here for the night.

b. They did the job very well, *considering that* they had no experience.

c. *Given that* they are inexperienced, they've done a good job.

d. *Now that* the semester is finished, I'm going to rest a few days and then take a trip.

e. *Now that* you are sixteen, you can get a driver's license.

2) in that 基本意思是“原因就在于…”,其引导的从句要放在主句后边,而且主句通常是在作比较。例如:

a. The girl is like her mother *in that* she also has very deli-



cate feeling. 这个女孩很像她妈妈,原因在于她感情也很细腻。

- b. Britain's press is unusual *in that* it is divided into two very different types of newspaper: the quality press and the popular press. 英国报业与众不同,原因就在于它的报纸分为内容严肃的大报和通俗报纸两种截然不同的类型。
- c. Mercury differs from other industrial metals *in that* it is a liquid. 水银不同于其他种类的工业用金属,原因就在于它是液体的。
- d. Liquids are like solids \_\_\_\_\_ they have a definite volume.  
(95-6 CET-4)  
A. in that \*  
B. for that  
C. with that  
D. at that
- e. Lhasa is unique \_\_\_\_\_ it is the highest city in China.  
(CET-4)  
A. on that  
B. so that  
C. for that  
D. in that \*

3) not that...but that 意思是“不是因为...而是因为...”。

I haven't finished writing the report yet, not that I'm lazy, but that I have no time.

4) 此外还有: *inasmuch as*, *insomuch as*, *in as much as*, *in so much as* 也可表原因,但显得比较文绉绉的,不太常用,通常只用于很正式的书面语或演讲中。例如:

- a. *Inasmuch as* the two government leaders could not reach

an agreement, the possibilities for peace are still remote.

## 27. 目的状语从句

### ► 1. 目的状语从句常见引导词

常用的连词有: *so that*, *in order that* 或 *that*。从句中常含有情态动词 *may/might, shall/should, will/would, can/could* 等。

- a. When I was a child, I would take a flashlight (手电筒) to bed with me *so that* I could read comic books without my parents' knowing about it. 小的时候,我常常睡觉时带着手电筒上床,这样我可以偷看连环画册而不被父母发现。
- b. I spoke slowly and clearly *so that/in order that* the audience could understand me.
- c. They carved the words on the stone *so that/in order that* the future generation should remember what they had done.
- d. We climbed high (*so*) *that* we might get a better view.
- e. The teacher raised his voice in order that the students in the back could hear more clearly.
- f. I turned off the TV (*in order*) *that* my roommate could study in peace and quiet. 我关掉了电视,好让我的室友安静地学习。

从句一般位于主句之后。若要强调目的状语从句,可将 *so that, in order that* 置于句首。

- g. *In order that* the coming generation can learn the martial arts, he has recently devoted much time to writing books on the subject.

## ►2. 目的状语从句的简化

1) In order for + sb + to do sth.

我们可用这一不定式结构表示目的。请看例句：

- a. I spoke slowly and clearly *in order for the audience to understand* me.
- b. They carved the words on the stone *in order for the future generation to remember* what they had done.
- c. The teacher raised his voice *in order for the students in the back to hear* more clearly.
- d. I turned off the TV *in order for my roommate to study* in peace and quiet.

2) in order to/so as to + do

若目的状语从句主语与主句主语是同一人或物，则可用 in order to 或 so as to + 动词不定式(短语)来表示目的。例如：

- a. All the key words in the article are printed in bold type *so as to* attract readers' attention.
- b. When I was a child, I would take a flashlight (手电筒) to bed with me *in order to* read comic books without my parents' knowing about it.
- c. I arrived at the cinema early so as not to miss the beginning of the film.
- d. We climbed high *in order to* get a better view.
- e. We climbed high so as to get a better view.
- f. *In order to* get a better view, we climbed high.
- g. *So as to* get a better view, we climbed high. (不正确。so as to 不能置于句首，只能放在句中；in order to 可在句首或句中。)
- h. \_\_\_\_\_ measure matter we must have units of weight,

volume and length. (CET-4)

- A. In order
- B. In order to
- C. So as
- D. So as to

正确答案:B。

3) 直接用动词不定式表示目的,如:

- a. **To get** a better view, we climbed high.
- b. **To avoid** criticism, do nothing, say nothing, be nothing.
- c. **To acquire** knowledge, one must study; but **to acquire** wisdom, one must observe.
- d. I'd climb the highest mountain, just **to see** you smile. I'd swim the ocean, just **to hold** your hand. I'd run a million miles, just **to be** with you forever.

### ►3. 其他引导词

1) **Lest**, **for fear (that)**, **in case**, 也可引导目的状语从句,有时含有否定意义,可译为“以免,以防,生怕…”。

- a. Take an umbrella with you **lest** it should rain.
- b. People evacuated the building **for fear that** the wall should collapse.
- c. She cleans the window with great care **lest** she **might** break the glass. (**in order that** she **might not** break the glass).
- d. We had a meeting and talked the matter over face to face, **for fear that** there **should be** any misunderstanding. (**in order that** there **should not be**...)我们开了个会来当面谈了这件事,以免发生任何误会。

2) 我们还可用 *in the hope that*, *on purpose that*, *for the purpose that*, *to the end that* 等来表示目的。

- a. The teacher raised his voice *on purpose that* the students in the back could hear more clearly.

## 28. 结果状语从句

### ► 1. 结果状语从句常见引导词

1) 常用的引导词有: *so... that*, *such... that*, *such that*。从句中一般不带情态助动词, 且从句都要放在主句之后。

- a. Sensible Sam: I saw you pushing your bicycle to work this afternoon.

Foolish Fred: Yes, I was *so* late *that* I didn't have time to get on it.

- b. A "John Hancock" is a person's signature. John Hancock was the first person to sign the American "Declaration of Independence". He signed it *so* large and bold *that* now we use his name to refer to anyone's signature!

- c. His anger was *so* explosive *that* he lost control of himself.

- d. Diplomats and crabs are creatures who move in *such* a way *that* it is impossible to tell whether they are coming or going.

- e. The sloth pays *so* little attention to its personal hygiene *that* green algae grow on its coarse hair and communities of a parasitic moth live in the depths of its coat producing caterpillars which graze on its mouldy hair. Its muscles are *such that* it is quite incapable of moving at a speed of over a kilometer an hour even over the shortest distances

and the swiftest movement it can make is a sweep of its hooked arm. It is virtually dumb and its hearing is *so poor that* you can let off a gun within inches of it and its only response will be to turn slowly and blink.

树懒极不讲究卫生,以至它粗糙的毛发上生出绿苔,成群的寄生蛾生长在它的皮毛深处,变成毛毛虫,并以它的脏毛为食物。它的肌肉不能让它哪怕在很短的距离内以每小时一公里的速度移动。它能做的最敏捷的动作就是挥一挥它那弯曲的胳膊。树懒简直就是聋子,听觉能力糟糕透顶,以至你能在离它几英寸的距离开一枪,而它惟一的反应也只不过是缓缓地扭一下头,眨眨眼。

2) 在 *such that* 引导的结果状语从句中, *such* = *so* + 形容词。

- a. His anger was *such that* he lost control of himself.
  - b. His anger was *so explosive that* he lost control of himself.
  - c. The weather is *such that* we can only stay in air-conditioned places.
  - d. The weather is *so hot that* we can only stay in air-conditioned places.
  - e. The performance was such \_\_\_\_\_ the audience was deeply moved. (CET-4)
- A. as
  - B. that
  - C. so
  - D. so that

正确答案:B。

## ►2. 结果状语从句的简化

我们可以用不定式来简化结果状语从句,句型是: *such...as to do sth*, *such as to do sth*, *so...as to do sth*。注意不要漏掉 *as*。

- a. He was such a fool as to believe him.
- b. He was so foolish as to believe him.
- c. Her voice was  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{such as to make everyone stare.} \\ \text{so bad as to. . . . .} \\ \text{so loud as to. . . . .} \end{array} \right.$
- d. His story is \_\_\_\_\_ to arouse our sympathy.

- A. such as
- B. so sad
- C. too sad
- D. such sad as
- E. so sad as

正确答案:A,E。

## ►3. 结果从句的倒装 (考试重点)

*such/so...that* 引导结果状语从句,为了强调,还可以将主句倒装。

- a. ***So fast does*** light travel that it is difficult for us to imagine its speed.  
原句为:Light travels ***so fast that*** it is difficult for us to imagine its speed.
- b. ***So terrible was*** the storm that the roofs were all ripped off.
- c. ***Such a fool was he*** that he believed him.
- d. \_\_\_\_\_ that the pilot couldn't fly through it. (CET-4)  
A. So the storm was severe

- B. So severe was the storm
- C. The storm so severe was
- D. Such was the storm severe

正确答案:B。

#### ► 4. 其他短语连接的结果状语从句

这些结构有：

to the degree (that), to the extent (that), to such a degree (that), to such an extent (that)。当它们位于句首表强调时,主句需倒装。

- a. To such an extent **did** his health deteriorate that he was forced to retire.
- b. To such a degree **was** he excited that he couldn't sleep last night.
- c. The bereaved mother **was** grieved *to the degree that* she couldn't eat anything for 3 days.
- d. To such an extent \_\_\_\_\_ his empty speech that some of us began to doze.
  - A. did he go on with
  - B. he would go on with
  - C. he went on with
  - D. he did go on with

正确答案:A。

### 29. so 和 such 的用法区别

二者区别如下：



## ► 1. so 的用法:

1) so + adj. /adv.

so 后边主要是接形容词或副词,例如:

a. The food is *so bad* in the school cafeteria *that* flies go there to lose weight. 我们学校食堂饭菜质量太差,连苍蝇都去那儿减肥。

b. The house is *so expensive* that I can't afford to buy it.

2) so + adj. + a(n) + 只接单数可数名词

a. This is *so expensive a house* that I can't afford to buy it.

b. He is *so patient a teacher* that every one of us likes him.

3) so many/much/few/little + 名词

so 可以与表示数量的形容词连用,如:many, much, few, little, 然后再接名词。此时不用 such。

如:so many flowers, so many beautiful flowers, so much patience, so much fun, so few cars, so little care

Recently in the automobile industry, multinational companies have developed to the point where such few cars can be described

A

B

as having been made entirely in one country. (TOEFL)

C

D

正确答案:B,应改为:so few cars。

## ► 2. such 的用法:

such 是一个限定词,因此后边要接名词。

1) such 后可直接加各种名词

单数可数名词:such a house, such a day.

复数可数名词:such boys, such shirts, such cars.

不可数名词:such patience, such weather, such information

2) such + 形容词 + 名词

单数可数名词:such *an expensive house*, such a nice day.

与 so 比较:so *expensive a house*

复数可数名词:such nice boys, such good shirts, such expensive cars.

不可数名词:such great patience, such nice weather, such important information

3) 限定词 + such + 名词

虽然我们一般不说:such many, such much, such few, 但我们可以说:many such dogs, much such attention, few such cars。能够这样用的原因是:首先由 such 修饰名词,比如:such cars;然后是由这些表示数量的形容词修饰 such,于是便有了 many such cars。其他可用在 such 前面的限定词有,no, other, some, any, one(two, three...)等。如:

b. These Ministers used *Splendid, Magnificent and other such expressions* to describe the King's new clothes.

c. No such man(不说:no such *a* man)

One such man(不说:one such *a* man 但说 such a man)

Every such fool(不说:every such *a* fool)

Three such men, all such men

Five hundred such planes 500 架这样的飞机

### 30. 条件状语从句

这里只分析真实条件句,而非真实条件句在“虚拟语气”一章中将作详细讨论。

## ► 1. 条件从句常用引导词:

最常见的引导词是 *if* 和 *unless*

- a. *If* winter comes, can spring be far behind? 既然冬天来了, 春天还会远吗?
- b. You don't need an umbrella *unless* it is raining. 如果天没下雨, 你就不需要带伞。
- c. In politics, *if* you want someone to make a speech, ask a man; *if* you want something done, ask a woman. (by Margaret Thatcher)
- d. *If* he's the first thing you think of when you wake up, the only thing you think of when you're awake, and the last thing you think of before you go to bed, then he's really something special.
- e. Today *if* a happy smile comes to you, a happy smile that perhaps you can't explain... it is because at that moment, I am thinking of you, and smiling too.

其他的连词有: *suppose (that)*, *supposing (that)*, *providing/provided (that)*, *so long as*, *as long as*, *on condition that* 等。

- f. A man is not old *as long as* he is seeking something. A man is not old until regrets take the place of dreams.
- g. Don't worry about the mistakes you may make in conversation, *so long as* you can make yourself understood in English.
- h. *So long as* you work hard enough, an iron rod can be ground into a needle. 只要功夫深, 铁杵磨成针。
- i. I may lend you the book *on condition that* you return it to me in time.
- j. *Suppose* nothing happens to you. *Suppose* you live there

your whole life and nothing happens. You never meet anybody, you never become anything and finally, you die one of those New York deaths and no one notices for two weeks until the smell drifts into the hallway.

- k. He will surely finish the job on time \_\_\_\_\_ he's left to do it in his own way. (2000 年 12 CET-4)
- A. in that
  - B. in case
  - C. as far as
  - D. so long as

正确答案:D。

## ►2. 其他表示条件意味的句型

1) 祈使句 / 省略句 + and... = if 从句 + 主句

- a. Use your head, and you will find a way. = If you use your head, you will find a way.
- b. A minute later and we would have missed the train. = If we had arrived a minute later, we would have missed the train.
- c. Spare the rod and spoil the child. = If you spare the rod, you'll spoil the child. 孩子不打不成器。

2) 祈使句 / 省略句 + or / or else = unless 从句 + 主句

- a. Give it back to me or (else) I'll tell your parents. = Unless you give it back to me, I'll tell your parents.

### 31. 让步状语从句

---

1000

[illegible]

1. *Journal of Management Studies*, 1996, 33, 1, 1-14.

- a. Though he was inexperienced, he did a very good job. =  
In spite of his inexperience, ... 或 In spite of his being in-  
experienced, ...
- b. Although it was dangerous, ... = Despite the danger,  
...
- c. Though the weather was bad, ... = In spite of the bad  
weather, ...
- d. Despite fats and oils are nutritionally important as energy  
A B C  
sources, medical research indicates that saturated fats  
D  
may contribute to hardening of the arteries.

正确答案:A,应改为:Though 或 Although

- e. \_\_\_\_\_ what he achieved in medicine, he remained mod-  
est.  
A. Despite  
B. Although  
C. If  
D. Whereas

正确答案为:A,因为这里 what = things that, 引导的是一个  
名词性从句,其本质上相当于一个名词短语,故此处仍需用介词。  
用 though 只能说成:Though he achieved a lot in medicine, he re-  
mained modest.

- f. \_\_\_\_\_ tired, he wouldn't stop working.  
A. Despite  
B. For all  
C. Though  
D. Whereas

正确答案为:C,因为这是一个省略的状语从句,原句相当于  
Though he was tired, he wouldn't stop working.

### ►3. 置于句首 while 一般表示“尽管…”

while 位于句首，一般意为“尽管…”，引导让步状语从句。在很多阅读文章中我们常见到 while 这一用法。

- a. *While* I sympathize with (同意) your point of view, I can not accept it.
- b. *While* many countries of the world celebrate their own Mother's Day at different times throughout the year, there are some countries such as Denmark, Finland, Italy, Turkey, Australia, and Belgium which also celebrate Mother's Day on the second Sunday of May.
- c. Now the US Supreme Court has spoken. Let there be no doubt, *while* I strongly disagree with the court's decision, I accept it. And tonight, for the sake of our unity of the people and the strength of our democracy, I offer my concession. (Vice President Al Gore's concession Speech)
- d. *While* the government pushed for a total breakup of the software maker, Microsoft fought fiercely against any positions that would affect its ability to compete in the marketplace.

### ►4. no matter wh -

No matter + what、who、when、where、which、how 可以代替：whatever、whoever、whenever、wherever、whichever、however 来引导让步状语从句。

- a. We have decided to do so, whatever happens.
- b. *Whoever* may trouble you, I will help you to the last.
- c. *No matter what* I did to the money, you still wanted it be-

cause it did not decrease in value. Many times in our lives, we are dropped, crumpled, and ground into the dirt by the decisions we make and the circumstances that come our way. We feel as though we are worthless. But **no matter what** has happened or what will happen, you will never lose your value in God's eyes. The worth of our lives come not in what we do or who we know but by **WHO WE ARE!** You are special—Don't ever forget it! 无论我如何对待那张钞票,你们还是想要它,因为他并没贬值。人生路上,我们会无数次地被自己的决定或碰到的逆境击倒、欺凌甚至碾得粉身碎骨。我们觉得自己似乎一文不值。但无论发生了什么,或将要发生什么,在上帝的眼中,你们永远不会丧失价值。生命的价值不依赖我们的所作所为,也不仰仗我们结交的人物,而是取决于我们本身!你们是独特的——永远不要忘记这一点。

### ► 5. as 的倒装句

表示让步,这一结构有:

adj.	} + as + 主语 + 谓语动词
adv.	
分词	
名词(无冠词)	
短语	

- Young as he is, he is knowledgeable. (形容词)
- Much as I respect him, I can not agree with him. (副词)
- Child as he is, he is knowledgeable. (名词不带冠词)
- Lazy a boy as he is, he is kind to help others. (注意词序: Lazy a boy)



- e. Oldest in our workshop as he is, he works hardest. (此时,最高级前不用 the)
- f. Praised as he was, he remained modest. (分词)
- g. Again as he failed in doing this experiment, he didn't lose heart. (副词)
- h. \_\_\_\_\_, she often behaves like a child.
  - A. As old is she
  - B. As old she is
  - C. Old as is she
  - D. Old as she is

正确答案:D。

另外可以把动词原形置于句首,此时结构为:V + as + S + 助动词(may、might, will、would, can、could, do、does、did)。若动词是及物动词,则其宾语也要随着动词提前。

- i. Lose money as I did, I got a lot of experience. (不用 lost, 宾语 money 紧跟在动词后面)
- j. Try as you will, you won't manage it. (动词原形提前)
- k. Fail as I did, I would never stop trying. (动词原形提前)
- l. **Try as he will**, no man breaks wholly loose from his first love, no matter who she be... We've only one virginity to lose and where we lost it there our hearts will be! 不管怎么样,没有一个男人能够完完全全忘却自己的初恋,不管她是谁。因为我们的童贞只有一次,我们永远不会忘记自己奉献出的第一次。

**注意:**这里的 as 可以替换为 that 或 though,尽管这样较少用。不可以用 although。

- a. Poor \_\_\_\_\_ he is, he is honest and kind.
  - A. that
  - B. however

- C. because
- D. although

正确答案:A。

b. \_\_\_\_\_, he does get annoyed with her sometimes. (2000-6 CET-4)

- A. Although much he likes her
- B. Much although he likes her
- C. As he likes her much
- D. Much as he likes her

正确答案:D。

c. Much although I have traveled, I have never seen anyone  
A  
to equal her in thoroughness, whatever the job. (98 考研)  
B C

正确答案:A,应改为:Much as。

►6. As/so + 形容词 + as + 主谓结构,放在句首,表示让步。

- a. As much as John hates to do it, he must stay at home and study tonight. 尽管约翰不愿意,但他今晚还是得呆在家里学习。
- b. *As amusing and perceptive as* graffiti (涂鸦) may sometimes be, it has by no means won universal approval.  
尽管涂鸦有时可以怡人情趣并发人深思,但它决不会赢得普遍的认同。
- c. America's First Lady Barbara Bush, to students at a college commencement:  
*As important as* your obligation as a doctor, a lawyer or a business leader will be, you are a human being first, and those human connections with spouses, with children,

with friends are the most important investments you will ever make. At the end of your life, you will never regret not having passed one more test, winning one more verdict, closing one more deal. You will regret time not spent with a husband, a child, a friend or a parent. Our success as a society depends not on what happens in the White House but on what happens inside your house. 尽管你们将来或许要成为一名医生、一位律师或是一个商人而要肩负重任,但首先你是一个平凡的人。因此,你与自己的配偶、孩子、朋友等之间的亲情或友情是最为重要的。在你生命临终前,让你感到后悔的不会是因为没有多做一次医学测试、没能多打赢一场官司或没有多做成一笔生意,而是后悔没有多花时间陪你的丈夫、孩子、朋友或是父母。社会的发展进步依赖于每一个家庭,而不是白宫。

- d. *As important as* qualifications are, and you won't get to an interview without the qualifications, the most thing in fact is the character and how a person presents himself at interview. I find it very difficult to define exactly the sort of person I am looking for, but when I meet someone I can tell whether they are the sort of person that I would like to appoint or whether they are not. 在求职过程中,资历固然很重要,因为若没有很好的资历,你是得不到面试机会的。但事实上,最重要的是你的个性以及在面谈中你如何去展现你自己。有时很难确切地说我需要何种类型的人才,但是在面谈过程中,我能够判断出他们是否是我所需要聘任的。

## ► 7. be 的倒装句表示让步

- a. All substances, *be they* gaseous, liquid or solid, are made

up of atoms. = All substances, *whether* they *may be* gaseous, liquid or solid, are made up of atoms. 一切物质,不论是气态、液态还是固态,都是由原子构成的。

- b. The business of each day, *be it selling goods or shipping them*, went quite smoothly. (*Whether it may be* selling goods or shipping them) 每天的生意,不论是售货还是运货,都进展得很顺利。
- c. *Be it* ever so humble, there is no place like home. = However humble it may be, there is no place like home. 金窝银窝,不如自己的草窝。
- d. Home is home, *be it* never so homely.
- e. \_\_\_\_\_, I will marry him all the same.
- A. Were he rich or poor
- B. Whether rich or poor
- C. Being rich or poor
- D. Be he rich or poor
- 正确答案:D。

## 32. 比较状语从句

### ► 1. as

1) 结构 1: “as + 形容词或副词 + as”。

- a. The work is not as difficult as you think.
- b. Eyes are as eloquent as lips (are).
- c. An adult human must take eight steps to go *as far as* a giraffe does in one stride.

2) 结构 2: “as + 形容词 + a(n) + 可数名词单数 + as”。

- a. Americans tend to think from small to large. Let us take

*as simple an example as* the addressing of envelopes. 美国人思维喜欢由具体到一般。我们举一个写信封地址的简单例子吧。

- b. Rarely has a technological development had *as great an impact* on so many aspects of social, economic, and cultural development as the growth of electronics.
- c. He caught *as large a fish as* I did that day.
- d. I didn't finish *as large a part* of the work as he did.
- e. I didn't finish *as a large* part of the work as he did. (不正确)

3) 在否定句中第一个 *as* 可用 *so* 代替。

- a. He is not *so/as* clever as you.
- b. No other modern nation devotes *so small a portion* of its wealth to public health *as* the United States does. (注意否定词 *No* 在句首, 故此句为否定句)

4) 为了保持句子平衡, 从句还可以用全部或部分倒装。例如:

- a. Small as it is, the ant is as much a creature *as are* all other animals on the earth.
- b. The computer revolution may well change society as fundamentally *as did* the Industrial Revolution.

## ► 2. *than*

1) 应是两同类事物才能比较, 如: *he* 和 *I*。不是两同类事物是无法比较的。

- a. He is taller than I (am).
- b. The weather of the South is wetter than the North. (错误)  
分析: 这是典型的错误句子, 因为 The weather of the South

和 the North 是两个截然不同的事物,无法进行比较。只能是“南方的天气”和“北方的天气”两同类事物才能比较。故原句应该为: The weather of the South is wetter than *that of* the North. (为避免重复,用 that 代替 the weather)

c. Young readers, more often than not, find the novels of  
A B

Dickens far more exciting than Thackeray. (考研题)  
C D

正确答案:D,应改为:Thackeray's。这里比较对象是两个作家的小说。Thackeray's 也就等于 Thackeray's novels。

2) 在有 than 的比较句子里,主句中必须有比较级形式出现。

a. He has made *great* contributions to the company *than* anyone else. (错误)

应将 great 改为 greater。

b. There are few electronic applications \_\_\_\_\_ to raise fears regarding future employment opportunities than robots. (98.6 CET-4)

A. likely

B. more likely

C. most likely

D. much likely

正确答案:B。

c. On the whole, ambitious students are much likely to succeed in their studies than are those with little ambition.  
A B C D

(TOEFL)

正确答案:B,应改为:more likely。

3) 为了保持句子平衡,从句还可以用全部或部分倒装。例如:

- a. The surface conditions on the planet Mars are more like the Earth's *than are* those of any other planet in the solar system. (95-10-17)
- b. The air inside a house or office building often has higher concentrations of contaminants \_\_\_\_\_ heavily polluted outside air. (95-8-10)
- A. than does  
B. more  
C. as some that are  
D. like of

正确答案:A。

### ►3. 表示“倍数比较”的三种句型

在英文中,除了用 *than*, *as* 来对两个事物进行比较外,我们还可以用 *times* 一词来说明两事物之间的倍数关系。例如,说 A 是 B 的三倍长,我们可以说:

- a. A is three times the *length* of B.  
b. A is three times longer than B.  
c. A is three times as long as B.

故在英文中,表示两事物倍数关系的比较,我们可用以下三种句型:

- a. A is...times bigger(或其他形容词比较级) than B  
b. A is...times as big(或其他形容词原级) as B  
c. A is...times the size(或其他形容词对应的名词形式) of B

如: big/size, long/length, wide/width, heavy/weight, high/height 等。

这里同样强调两事物之间的可比性。如:

- a. The earth has a *mass* that is one hundred times *the moon*.

(×)

这句中两个被比较的事物是:地球的质量与月球的质量,而不是地球的质量与月球。故应将原句改为:

b. The earth has a mass that is one hundred times **that of** the moon.

c. Americans eat \_\_\_\_\_ as they actually need every day.  
(98.6 CET-4)

A. twice as much protein

B. twice protein as much twice

C. twice protein as much

D. protein as twice much

正确答案:A。

#### ► 4. “The more . . . , the more”句型表示比较

用法:

1) 注意此句型的主从句关系:“The + 比较级(从句), the + 比较级(主句)”;

2) 翻译成汉语时先译从句,后译主句;

a. The more she practiced, the worse she sang.

b. The less you open your heart to others, the more your heart suffers.

c. The nearer it is drawn to the surface of the earth(从句), the more a body weighs (主句). 一个物体离地球表面越近,重量就越大。

d. *The more* we help others, *the more* we receive in return. We advance ourselves as we help others. 帮助别人越多,我们获得的回报也越多。帮助了别人,提升了自己。

e. *The more* you leave things to chance, *the less chance* there



is for you.

- f. Friends are lights in winter: *the older* the friend, *the brighter* the light. 朋友犹如冬日里的暖阳。愈久弥珍。
- g. *The higher* you go(从句), *the less dense* air becomes(主句). = Air becomes less dense(主句) *the higher* you go(从句). 你升得越高,空气就会变得越稀薄。
- h. *The higher* you climb the ladder, *the more* you get into administrative or executive work, *the greater* the emphasis on ability to work within the organization rather than on technical abilities or professional knowledge. 你的地位爬得越高,你担任的行政管理工作权限越大,你就越是要注意在单位内部的管理能力,这比技术能力和专业知识更重要。
- i. *The better* a man's self-image, *the better* friends he is likely to choose, hence *the better* the relationship, and hence his self-esteem is enhanced. *The worse* a man's self-image, *the more* likely he is to choose jerks for friends, hence the relationship is likely to go bad, and his self-image is further lowered because of this failure. So the lesson is obvious. You cannot depend on others for your sense of self-worth. It must come from within you. 一个人的自我形象越好,他所交的朋友也会越好,因此这样的友谊就会越浓厚,从而也就增强了他的自信心。反之,一个人若是自我形象越差,所交的朋友也会越差,因此这样的友谊很可能会变质,这种人际交往的失败进而会导致自我形象贬低。因此,道理很简单,自我价值的提升不在于别人而在于自己。

若主句主语较长,主句还可用倒装句式:

- j. *The more rural* the community, *the more uniform* *are* the

customs of child upbringing. (倒装句)

k. Hubble's law states that *the greater* the distance between any two galaxies, \_\_\_\_\_ *is their relative speed of separation*.

- A. the greatest
- B. the greater
- C. greater than
- D. as great as

正确答案:B。

►5. “(Just) as..., so...”结构表示类比

1) 基本意思是“正如...,所以...”;

2) 第二句可用倒装结构。

a. As you sow, so *will you* reap/so you will reap.

种瓜得瓜,种豆得豆。

b. Just as dark clouds cannot long hide the sun, so no lies can cover up the fact. 乌云遮不住太阳,谎言掩盖不了事实。

c. Just as food nourishes the body, so *do books* enrich the mind.

食物滋养身体,书本丰富心灵。

d. As it is the mark of great minds to say many things in a few words, so it is the mark of little minds to use many words to say nothing.

大智者聊聊数语,即能达意;寡智者口若悬河,仍言之无物。

e. As land is improved by sowing it with various seeds, so is the mind by exercising it with different studies.

土壤因播种不同的种子而改良,智力用各科的学习来提

高。

f. Just as the soil is a part of the earth, \_\_\_\_\_ the atmosphere. (95 考研题)

- A. as it is                      B. the same is  
C. so is                         D. and so is

正确答案:C。

g. Just as they must put aside their prejudices, \_\_\_\_\_ we must be prepared to accept their good faith. (CET-4)

- A. thus      B. so      C. as      D. like

正确答案:B。

#### ►6. A is to B what/as C is to D

这一结构可以改写为: *What/As C is to D, so is A to B* 或 *that A is to B*.

- a. Air is to man *what/as* water is to fish. = *What/As* water is to fish, *so is* air to man(或 *that* air is to man).  
b. Sixteen is to eight what two is to one.  
c. The people is to the people's army *what* water is to fish.  
    军民鱼水情。  
d. Personality is to man *what* perfume is to a flower. (人的品格,犹如花的芳香。)  
e. What/As blood vessel is to a man's body, *that* railway is to transportation. (*so is* railway to transportation.)  
f. Case study is to Harvard what the Leaning Tower is to Pisa.

#### ►7. "No more ... than"表示比较

用法:

1) no more... than 或 not... any more than 基本意思是:  
“同...一样不...”;

2) than 后面句子肯定形式, 否定意思。

a. The Emperor *can* see no more than his Ministers.

此句相当于: The Emperor *can not* see and his ministers *can not* see, either.

b. You are no more clever than he.

此句相当于: You *are not* clever and he *is not* clever, either. 或者 You are as *stupid* as he.

比较:

*not more ... than ...:*

You are *not* more clever than he. 此句意思: You are as clever as he. You both are clever, not stupid.

c. A fool can *no more* see his own folly *than* he can see his ears. 傻瓜看不到自己的愚蠢, 就像他看不到自己的耳朵一样。

d. Unmerited praise is *no more* honor *than* deserved blame is. 不该得到的表扬和应该受批评一样不光彩。

e. As a jazz lover, I find it refreshing that many Chinese pop stars are beginning to be influenced by jazz, and are including jazzy rhythms and harmonies in their songs. However, incorporating jazz elements into pop music does *not* make it jazz, *any more than* putting chili pepper into a MacDonald's hamburger *turns* it into Sichuan cuisine.

译文: 作为一个爵士乐迷, 我发现很多中国流行歌曲的歌星们开始受到爵士乐的影响, 正在把爵士乐的节奏与和声运用到他们的歌曲当中, 这让我感到很新鲜。然而, 把爵士乐的成分掺进流行乐, 并不能将流行音乐变成爵士乐, 这就像把辣椒放进麦当劳的汉堡包, 也变不成四川风味一

样。

- f. The heart is \_\_\_\_\_ intelligent than the stomach, for they are both controlled by the brain. (97 考研题)
- A. not so  
B. not much  
C. no more  
D. much more

正确答案:C。

### ►8. “not A so much as B / not so much A as B”表示比较

用法:

1) 基本含义为:“与其说 A 倒不如说 B”,或“是 B,而不是 A”。但在实际句子中翻译非常灵活;

2) A 和 B 是两个被比较的平行结构,如:同为介词短语,动词不定式,名词短语或其他平行结构。

- a. The great use of a school education is *not so much* to teach you things *as* to teach you the art of learning. (被比较的是:动词不定式短语)
- b. The trumpet player was certainly loud, but I was *not* bothered by his loudness *so much as* by his lack of talent. (被比较的是:介词短语)
- c. The great thing in this world is *not so much* where we stand *as* in what direction we are moving. 人生的意义不在于你目前身在何处,而在于你心向何方。
- d. We both agreed that our marriage had taken a marked decline in the romance department. And it wasn't a lack of sex that concerned us *so much as* the lack of conversation. Conversation, in fact, has always been our aphrodisiac.

我们俩都承认,我们的婚姻在浪漫这方面已大打折扣了,这倒不是因为性生活的缺少,而在于缺少交流。事实上,保持交谈曾一直是我们的感情的催化剂。

- e. He does not respect learning and prefers "sport". The problem set for society is *not* the virtue of the type *so much as* its adequacy for its function. 他不重视学习,只喜欢“消遣”。社会要回答的问题并不是这类人物有无美德,而是他是否胜任其职务。

### 33. 方式状语从句

- 1. 方式状语从句表示动作的方式,引导词有: *as*, *like*, *as if*, *as though*, *the way* 等。请看例句:

- a. When in Rome, do *as* the Romans do. 入乡随俗。  
(When traveling, follow the customs of the local people.)
- b. Work *like* you don't need money, love *like* you've never been hurt, and dance *like* nobody's watching.
- c. Do *as* I say, not *as* I do. = Follow my advice, but don't follow my example.
- d. Do it *the way* you were taught.
- e. He looks *as though* / *as if* he is an actor.
- f. Nails protect the ends of human fingers and toes \_\_\_\_\_.  
protect the toes of most other vertebrates(脊椎动物).
- A. claws  
B. as claws  
C. as claws to  
D. so do claws

正确答案: B。

### 第三章 状语从句练习

#### 3.1 根据两个分句之间的逻辑关系,填入相应的连词。

1. I've brought my umbrella \_\_\_\_\_ it's raining.
2. You don't need an umbrella \_\_\_\_\_ it's raining.
3. I've brought my umbrella \_\_\_\_\_ it's not raining.
4. I've brought my umbrella \_\_\_\_\_ I don't get wet.
5. I've brought my umbrella \_\_\_\_\_ it rains.
6. We'll stay here \_\_\_\_\_ it stops raining.
7. I intend to go for a walk this morning \_\_\_\_\_ it's raining.
8. I try hard to learn English \_\_\_\_\_ I don't seem to improve.
9. I find it difficult to believe a word he says \_\_\_\_\_ he never tells me the truth.
10. You see the lightning \_\_\_\_\_ it happens, but you hear the thunder later.

#### 3.2 单项选择(时间状语从句)

11. \_\_\_\_\_ she realized it was too late to go home.  
A. No sooner it grew dark than  
B. Scarcely had it grown dark than  
C. Hardly did it grow dark that  
D. It was not until dark that
12. I had just started back for the house to change my clothes \_\_\_\_\_ I heard voices.  
A. as  
B. when

- C. after  
D. while
13. Not until \_\_\_\_\_ himself seriously ill.  
A. he had completed the task did he find  
B. had he completed the task did he find  
C. he completed the task he had found  
D. did he complete the task he had found
14. By the time the firemen arrived, the whole building  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. has burned down  
B. had burned down  
C. will have burned down  
D. burned down
15. We heard a loud sound of drums beating \_\_\_\_\_ the parade marched.  
A. till  
B. while  
C. the moment  
D. once
16. The policemen went into action \_\_\_\_\_ they heard the alarm.  
A. promptly  
B. presently  
C. quickly  
D. directly
17. We held a meeting to sum up our experience \_\_\_\_\_ we finished the work.  
A. incidentally  
B. while



- C. immediately  
D. before
18. \_\_\_\_\_ Charles started a job, he did it \_\_\_\_\_ it was finished.
- A. Since, where  
B. Once, until  
C. Each time, once  
D. The moment, as

### 3.3 单项选择(地点状语从句)

19. The picture is not hanging \_\_\_\_\_ it should on the wall.
- A. until  
B. wherever  
C. where  
D. when
20. \_\_\_\_\_, work songs often exhibit the song culture of a people in a fundamental form
- A. They occur where they are  
B. Occurring where  
C. Where they occur  
D. Where do they occur
21. I have kept that portrait \_\_\_\_\_ I can see it every day, as it always reminds me of my university days in London.
- A. which  
B. where  
C. whether  
D. when

3.4 单项选择(原因状语从句)

22. \_\_\_\_\_ you are leaving tomorrow, we can eat dinner together tonight.  
A. For  
B. Since  
C. Before  
D. While
23. \_\_\_\_\_ the cold weather, we decided not to go out.  
A. Because  
B. Due to  
C. Owing to  
D. Since
24. Neon is said to be inert \_\_\_\_\_ does not react with other substances.  
A. Because of it  
B. it is because  
C. because it  
D. is because it
25. \_\_\_\_\_ he will not accept the offer, I have to find someone else.  
A. Until  
B. Though  
C. As soon as  
D. Seeing that
26. Skimming also differs from scanning \_\_\_\_\_ it is an effort to get general information rather than specific facts.  
A. in which  
B. for that  
C. in that

- D. on that
27. Although many people view conflict as bad, conflict is sometimes useful \_\_\_\_\_ it forces people to test the relative merits of their attitudes and behaviors.
- A. by which
- B. to which
- C. in that
- D. so that
28. Advertising is distinguished from other forms of communication \_\_\_\_\_ the advertiser pays for the message to be delivered.
- A. in that
- B. which
- C. whereas
- D. because of

### 3.5 单项选择(目的状语从句)

29. Let's take the front seats \_\_\_\_\_ we may have a better view.
- A. so as to
- B. in order to
- C. in order
- D. that
30. The motorist looked over the engine carefully \_\_\_\_\_ on the way.
- A. so that it should go wrong
- B. lest it should go wrong
- C. in order that should not go wrong
- D. for fear that it should not go wrong

31. I spoke slowly and clearly \_\_\_\_\_ the audience to understand me.  
A. so that  
B. in order that  
C. in order for  
D. so as
32. Batteries must be kept in dry places \_\_\_\_\_ electricity should leak away.  
A. where  
B. lest  
C. that  
D. unless

### 3.6 单项选择(结果状语从句)

33. It is \_\_\_\_\_ weather that I would like to go to the beach.  
A. so nice  
B. such nice  
C. such a nice  
D. so nice a
34. She told us \_\_\_\_\_ stories that we all laughed.  
A. so funny  
B. such funny  
C. funny such  
D. so fun
35. The windows are \_\_\_\_\_ small as not to admit much light at all.  
A. very  
B. as  
C. too

- D. so
36. Would you be \_\_\_\_\_ do me a favor, please?
- A. so kind to
- B. kind as to
- C. as kind to
- D. so kind as to
37. The police called off their search for the survivors of the air crash because of \_\_\_\_\_.
- E. such bad weather
- F. so bad
- G. such a bad weather
- H. too bad a weather

### 3.7 单项选择(条件状语从句)

38. \_\_\_\_\_ you fell in love with your boss, what would you do?
- A. Provide
- B. Supposing
- C. Unless
- D. Except
39. You can arrive in Beijing earlier for the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ you don't mind traveling by air.
- A. provided
- B. unless
- C. though
- D. until
40. Government cannot operate effectively \_\_\_\_\_ it is free from such interference.
- A. so long as

- B. if only
- C. unless
- D. lest

### 3.8 单项选择(让步状语从句)

41. \_\_\_\_\_ lay eggs, but some give birth to live young.
- A. Although most insects
  - B. Most insects
  - C. Despite most insects
  - D. Most insects that
42. Airsickness is produced by a disturbance of the inner ear, \_\_\_\_\_ psychogenic factors, such as fear, also play a part.
- A. in spite of
  - B. neither
  - C. nor
  - D. although
43. \_\_\_\_\_ his physical handicap, he \_\_\_\_\_ a successful businessman.
- A. Despite/has become
  - B. Although/has become
  - C. In spite/became
  - D. Despite of/becomes
44. \_\_\_\_\_ all our kindness to help her, Sarah refused to listen to us.
- A. At
  - B. For
  - C. In
  - D. On

45. \_\_\_\_\_, the policeman still has good command.  
 A. Sophisticated as search techniques were  
 B. Sophisticated were search techniques  
 C. Search techniques were sophisticated  
 D. Sophisticated as search techniques they were
46. \_\_\_\_\_, I still enjoy driving even after my accident.  
 A. It may seem strange though  
 B. Strange though it may seem  
 C. Though strange it may seem  
 D. Strange it may seem though
47. I've already told you that I'm going to buy it, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. however much it costs  
 B. however does it cost much  
 C. how much does it cost  
 D. no matter how it costs
48. \_\_\_\_\_, the fire men were unable to quench the fire.  
 A. Try they would  
 B. As they tried  
 C. What they tried  
 D. Try as they would
49. \_\_\_\_\_ I admire him as a poet, I do not like him as a man.  
 A. Much so  
 B. So much  
 C. Much as  
 D. As much
50. The engineers are going through with their project, \_\_\_\_\_ the expenses have risen.  
 A. even though

- B. just because  
C. now that  
D. as though
51. Every society, \_\_\_\_\_ great or small, primitive or civilized, has a culture.  
A. if it is  
B. no matter it is  
C. if it were  
D. be it
52. \_\_\_\_\_, we will set off as we planned.  
A. Were it good or bad  
B. Being good or bad  
C. Whether good or bad  
D. Be it good or bad
53. All science students, \_\_\_\_\_, should have a good foundation in basic sciences.  
A. whether they are future physicists and chemists  
B. they are future physicists or chemists  
C. they should be future physicists or chemists  
D. be they future physicists or chemists

**3.9 翻译下列句子, 注意分析句型(比较状语从句)。**

54. Just as we nurture our bodies with the right vitamins and nutrients, so we need to nurture our minds with good thoughts.
55. Science is built with facts just as a house is built with bricks, but a collection of facts cannot be called science any more than a pile of bricks can be called a house.
56. A causeless event or thing, we cannot think of any more



than we can of a stick with only one end.

57. The greatness of a people is no more determined by their number than the greatness of a man is determined by his height.
58. What Newton was to mechanics and Darwin to biology, Freud was to psychology.
59. Stress is inevitable, but you don't have to be a victim of it. So what are the tools that can calm our nerves and open our minds? Here comes the good news: we all have the inner resources that are needed: courage, optimism, humility, humor, intuition, acceptance, forgiveness, love and yes, patience. These inner resources are to our souls what medicine is to our bodies.

### 3.10 单项选择(比较状语从句)

60. An adult human must take eight steps to go \_\_\_\_\_ as a giraffe does in one stride.
- A. as far  
B. the farther  
C. how far  
D. farther
61. The harder you work, \_\_\_\_\_ you have of passing your exam.
- A. more chance  
B. more chances  
C. the more chance  
D. the chances
62. The knee is \_\_\_\_\_ most other joints in the body because it cannot twist without injury.

- A. more likely to be damaged than  
B. much likely to be damaged than  
C. likely to be more damaged than  
D. more than likely to be damaged
63. Smoking is so harmful to personal health that it kills \_\_\_\_\_ people each year than automobile accidents.  
A. seven more times  
B. seven times more  
C. over seven times  
D. seven times
64. Just as the soil is a part of the earth, \_\_\_\_\_ the atmosphere.  
A. as it is  
B. the same is  
C. so is  
D. and so is
65. I would have paid \_\_\_\_\_ for my car if the salesman had insisted, because I really wanted it.  
A. as much twice  
B. much twice  
C. twice as much  
D. two times
66. Any preexisting illness, even \_\_\_\_\_ the common cold, increases the chances of contracting another disease.  
A. as mild one as  
B. as one mild as  
C. as a mild one as  
D. as mild a one as
67. After retirement my father earns only \_\_\_\_\_ as he used

- to. However, he lives happily enjoying his leisure time.
- A. a half as much  
B. a half as many  
C. half as many  
D. half as much
68. The greater population there is in a locality, \_\_\_\_\_ for water, transportation, and disposal of refuse.
- A. the great need  
B. the greater need there is  
C. greater the need  
D. the greater the need there is
69. In China the South generally receives much less snow than \_\_\_\_\_ the North.
- A. does  
B. it does  
C. does in  
D. it does in
70. Robin \_\_\_\_\_ give up his scheme, than the spider would give up his attempts.
- A. will no longer  
B. can no more  
C. would rather  
D. would no more

### 3.11 单项选择(综合练习)

71. His father had promised to buy him a computer \_\_\_\_\_ he behaved himself.
- A. provided  
B. while

- C. in case  
D. after
72. \_\_\_\_\_ the weather was bad, we decided not to go out.  
A. In spite of  
B. Though  
C. Since  
D. Although
73. I find it difficult to believe a word he says \_\_\_\_\_ he never tells me the truth.  
A. so  
B. as  
C. though  
D. while
74. \_\_\_\_\_ dragon exists in the world. That's your illusion.  
A. No such a thing as  
B. No such thing as a  
C. No such a thing as a  
D. No such thing as
75. \_\_\_\_\_, many people still vote against the use of the death penalty.  
A. However some crimes are inexcusable  
B. However are some crimes inexcusable  
C. However inexcusable some crimes are  
D. Some crimes are however inexcusable
76. He always did well at school \_\_\_\_\_ having to do part-time jobs every now and then.  
A. in case of  
B. in spite of  
C. regardless of

- D. on account of
77. \_\_\_\_\_ the calculation is right, scientists can never be sure that they have included all variables and modeled them accurately.
- A. Even if  
B. As far as  
C. If only  
D. So long as
78. These two areas are similar \_\_\_\_\_ they both have a high rainfall during this season.
- A. to that  
B. besides that  
C. in that  
D. except that
79. The trumpet player was certainly loud. But I wasn't bothered by his loudness \_\_\_\_\_ by his lack of talent.
- A. than  
B. more than  
C. as  
D. so much as
80. \_\_\_\_\_ devised to lessen the drudgery of washing clothes that the origin of the washing machine is unclear.
- A. Were the inventions so numerous  
B. The inventions so numerous  
C. So numerous were the inventions  
D. The inventions that were so numerous
81. \_\_\_\_\_ some flowers contain more nectar than others, how does a honeybee worker, faced with a patch of

- flowers containing variable amounts of nectar, decide when to stop collecting.
- A. Given that
  - B. Giving that
  - C. To give
  - D. Being given
82. Hovercraft, or air-cushion vehicles, are unusual \_\_\_\_\_ travel over land and water on a layer of air.
- A. they
  - B. in they
  - C. that they
  - D. in that they
83. Computers that once took up entire rooms are now \_\_\_\_\_ to put on desktops and into wristwatches.
- A. smaller than
  - B. so small
  - C. as small as
  - D. so small as
84. \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that his initial experiments had failed, Prof. White persisted in his research.
- A. Because of
  - B. Though
  - C. In spite of
  - D. In view of
85. Criticism and self-criticism is necessary \_\_\_\_\_ it helps us to find and correct our mistakes.
- A. by that
  - B. at that
  - C. on that

- D. in that
86. There are few electronic applications \_\_\_\_\_ to raise fears regarding future employment opportunities than robots.
- A. likely  
B. more likely  
C. most likely  
D. much likely
87. The world's deepest cave, Pierre St. Martin in the Pyrenees mountains, is almost three times as deep \_\_\_\_\_
- A. as the Empire State Building is high  
B. that the Empire State Building is higher  
C. is higher than the Empire State Building  
D. and the Empire State Building's height
88. Just as the builder is skilled in the handling of his bricks, \_\_\_\_\_ the experienced writer is skilled in the handling of his words.
- A. as    B. thus    C. so    D. like
89. According to psychologists, a person's attention is attracted \_\_\_\_\_ by the intensity of different signals as by their context, significance, and information content.
- A. not much so  
B. not so much  
C. so much not  
D. so not much
90. \_\_\_\_\_ their differences, the couple were developing an obvious and genuine affection for each other.
- A. But for

- B. For all  
C. Above all  
D. Except for
91. The chief reason for the population growth isn't so much a rise in birth rates \_\_\_\_\_ a fall in death rates as a result of improvements in medical care.  
A. and  
B. as  
C. but  
D. rather than
92. The very essence of civil liberty consists in the right of every individual to claim the protection of laws, \_\_\_\_\_ he receives an injury.  
A. whenever  
B. wherever  
C. whatever  
D. whereas
93. \_\_\_\_\_ she was a talented amateur cook, whose specialty was rich, cream-filled gateaux and puddings, she decided to put that talent to work.  
A. Seen that  
B. Seeing that  
C. So  
D. When
94. \_\_\_\_\_ she started to look for premises, she looked at the business property columns in the local paper.  
A. Not sooner than  
B. While  
C. The moment



- D. Hardly
95. Angiosperms inhabit relatively diverse environments and may be found \_\_\_\_\_ higher plants can survive.
- A. there  
B. where  
C. somewhere  
D. then
96. \_\_\_\_\_ that my head had cleared, my brain was also beginning to work much better.
- A. For  
B. Now  
C. Since  
D. Despite
97. A man escaped from the prison last night. It was a long time \_\_\_\_\_ the guards discovered what had happened.
- A. before  
B. until  
C. since  
D. after
98. The more female faculty at a school, whether it is co-ed or single sex, the more \_\_\_\_\_ a female student is to go on to postgraduate accomplishment, usually a higher degree.
- A. possible  
B. probable  
C. alike  
D. likely
99. \_\_\_\_\_ all his varied modes of writing and the multiplicity of characters in his novel, the novelist and his work

are of a piece.

- A. At
- B. For
- C. In
- D. On

100. A turtle differs from all other reptiles \_\_\_\_\_ it has its body encased in a protective shell of its own.

- A. for that
- B. for what
- C. in case
- D. in that

101. \_\_\_\_\_ you are familiar with the author's ideas, try reading all the sections as quickly as you possibly can.

- A. Now that
- B. Ever since
- C. So that
- D. As long as

102. The songs of Bob Dylan are very popular among people, who regard him \_\_\_\_\_ other musicians.

- A. as more superior to
- B. as superior than
- C. as superior to
- D. as more superior than

103. Scientists generally agree that the Earth's climate will warm up over the next 50 to 100 years \_\_\_\_\_ it has warmed in the 20,000 years since the Ice Age.

- A. as long as
- B. as much as
- C. as soon as

- D. as well as
104. People throughout the world are eating \_\_\_\_\_ meat per person as they did in 1945.
- A. more than twice  
B. twice as much  
C. twice much as  
D. twice more
105. The boy walked quietly into the room \_\_\_\_\_ awake his room mates.
- A. in order to not  
B. so as not to  
C. for not to  
D. so as to
106. Let us hope that \_\_\_\_\_ a nuclear war, the human race might still survive.
- A. in relation to  
B. in support of  
C. in the case of  
D. in the event of
107. No sooner had we started the experiment \_\_\_\_\_ we stopped it because of the cut-off of water.
- A. than  
B. when  
C. then  
D. as
108. \_\_\_\_\_ was the first fully successful transatlantic cable finally laid.
- A. Not until 1866  
B. Until 1866, just

- C. Until 1866  
D. In 1866, not until
109. This is an ideal site for a university \_\_\_\_\_ it is far from the downtown area.  
A. provided that  
B. now that  
C. so that  
D. in that
110. \_\_\_\_\_, I will marry him all the same.  
A. Were he rich or poor  
B. Whether rich or poor  
C. Being rich or poor  
D. Be he rich or poor
111. Mercury differs from other industrial metals \_\_\_\_\_ it is a liquid.  
A. and that  
B. but that  
C. in that  
D. for that
112. Some companies have introduced flexible working time with less emphasis on pressure \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. than more on efficiency  
B. and more efficiency  
C. and more on efficiency  
D. than efficiency
113. She is \_\_\_\_\_ a musician than her brother.  
A. much of  
B. much as  
C. more of

- D. more as
114. The lower \_\_\_\_\_ in a room, the more slowly our eyes focus.
- A. the level of lighting
  - B. light level
  - C. leveling of light
  - D. lighting is level
115. Just as the value of a telephone network increases with each new phone added to the system, \_\_\_\_\_ the value of a computer system increase with each program that turns out.
- A. so
  - B. so does
  - C. and it does
  - D. so does it
116. The heart is \_\_\_\_\_ intelligent than the stomach, for they are both controlled by the brain.
- A. not so
  - B. not much
  - C. no more
  - D. much more
117. Melted iron is poured into the mixer much \_\_\_\_\_ tea is poured into a cup from a teapot.
- A. in the same way like
  - B. in the same way which
  - C. in the same way
  - D. in the same way as
118. There is no reason they should limit how much vitamin you take, \_\_\_\_\_ they can limit how much water you

drink.

- A. much more than
- B. no more than
- C. no less than
- D. any more than

119. The lenses in an optical microscope bend the light passing through a specimen to form an image of that specimen that is much larger \_\_\_\_\_ actually viewed.

- A. than it
- B. than the one
- C. one than
- D. than one which

120. Hydrogen is the fundamental element of the universe \_\_\_\_\_ it provides the building blocks from which the other elements are produced.

- A. so that
- B. but that
- C. in that
- D. provided that

121. The vocabulary and grammatical differences between British and American English are so trivial and few as hardly \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. noticed
- B. to be noticed
- C. being noticed
- D. to notice

122. \_\_\_\_\_ recurring fear is out of proportion to any real danger, it is called a phobia.

- A. When

- B. Whereas  
C. Which  
D. Whether
123. \_\_\_\_\_ no conclusive evidence exists, many experts believe that the wheel was invented only once and then diffused to the rest of the world.  
A. Even  
B. But  
C. Although  
D. So
124. Human being are superior to animals \_\_\_\_\_ they can use language as a tool to communicate.  
A. for which  
B. in which  
C. for that  
D. in that
125. \_\_\_\_\_ earth scientists understand how and why earthquakes happen, forecasts are usually inaccurate.  
A. as  
B. while  
C. for  
D. since
126. \_\_\_\_\_ Sarah Orne Jewett, a nineteenth-century writer, read widely in her family's extensive library.  
A. That she received little education formally  
B. As she received little formal education  
C. The little formal education that she received  
D. Although she received little formal education
127. Gorillas are quiet animals, \_\_\_\_\_ they are capable of

making about 20 different sounds.

- A. whether
- B. which
- C. even though
- D. as well as

128. \_\_\_\_\_ your opinions are worth considering, the committee finds it unwise to place too much importance on them.

- A. As
- B. Since
- C. Provided
- D. While

129. \_\_\_\_\_ we have begun exploring in earnest, we are getting glimpses of how huge the questions are and how far from being answered.

- A. That
- B. Then
- C. Now that
- D. Now

130. \_\_\_\_\_ that they may eventually reduce the amount of labor needed on construction sites by 90 percent.

- A. So clever are the construction robots
- B. So clever the construction robots are
- C. Such construction robots are clever
- D. Such clever construction robots are

131. The atmosphere is as much a part of the earth as \_\_\_\_\_ its soils and the water of its lakes, rivers and oceans.

- A. are
- B. do
- C. is
- D. has



- ### 3.12 辨别改错

- 180

139. Science fiction is any fiction dealing with the future or  
A  
 with so imaginative subjects as interstellar travel, life  
B C  
 on other planets, or time travel.  
D
140. The speaker claimed that no other modern nation de-  
A  
 votes so small a portion of its wealth to public assis-  
B  
 tance and health than the United States does.  
C D
141. The moon has a mass that is nearly one hundred times  
less than the earth; in consequence, the force of gravi-  
A B C  
 ty at the moon's surface is only one-sixth of that at the  
D  
 earth's surface.
142. Some insects hear ultrasonic soundsmore than two oc-  
A B C  
 taves than higher human can.  
D
143. Saturn is the second largest planet after Jupiter, with a  
A B C  
 diameter nearly ten times those of Earth.  
D
144. It was not so much the many blows he received for the  
A B  
 lack of fighting spirits that led to his losing the game.  
C D
145. Despite fats and oils are nutritionally important as ener-  
A B C  
 gy sources, medical research indicates that saturated  
D

fats my contribute to hardening of the arteries.

146. Much although I have traveled, I have never seen any-

A

one to equal her in thoroughness, whatever the job.

B

C

D

147. Some psychologists believe that those who are encour-

A

aged to be independent, responsible, and competent in

B

childhood are likely more than others to become moti-

C

D

vated to achieve.

148. Brown rice has great nutritional value than white rice

A

B

C

because the nutrient-rich outer layers of the rice kernel are not removed from brown rice.

D

149. Although Christopher Columbus failed in his original

A

goal, the discoveries he did make were as important

B

C

than the route to Asia he expected to find.

D

150. Ice is less denser than the liquid from which it is

A

B

C

D

formed.

151. Of the many machines invented in the late century,

A

B

none had a great impact on the United States economy

C

D

than the automobile.

第三章 状语从句练习参考答案

3.1

1. I've brought my umbrella because it's raining.
2. You don't need an umbrella unless it's raining.
3. I've brought my umbrella even though it's not raining.
4. I've brought my umbrella so that I don't get wet.
5. I've brought my umbrella in case it rains.
6. We'll stay here until it stops raining.
7. I intend to go for a walk this morning although it's raining.
8. I try hard to learn English though I don't seem to improve.
9. I find it difficult to believe a word he says as he never tells me the truth.
10. You see the lightning the moment it happens, but you hear the thunder later.

3.2-3.8

- |              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 11-15: DBABB | 16-20: DCBCC | 21-25: BBCCD |
| 26-30: CCADB | 31-35: CBBBD | 36-40: DABAC |
| 41-45: BDABA | 46-50: BADCA | 51-53: DDD   |

3.9

54. 正如维生素营养能够滋补身体, 好的思想也能够丰富我们的心灵。(Just as..., so...)
55. 诚然, 科学是建立在事实基础之上的, 正如房屋是用砖块砌成的; 但是简单的事实罗列不能称之为科学, 就如同砖块的堆砌不能成为房屋一样。(not... any more than...)

56. 就像我们想象不出只有一端的棍子一样,我们也想象不出事情会无缘无故的发生。(not... any more than...)
57. 一个民族的伟大不能由其人口数而定,正像一个人的伟大不能由其高矮决定一样。(no... more than...)
58. 弗洛伊德对于心理学的作用,就像牛顿之于力学,达尔文之于生物学一样。(A is to B what C is to D.)
59. 压力不可避免,但你也不一定非得深受其害。那么要想做到精神安宁、心胸开阔到底有何良方呢?秘诀在于:我们自身都有克服消极情绪的内在武器,这就是:勇气、乐观、谦卑、幽默、直觉、容忍、宽恕、爱还有忍耐。这些秘密武器对我们心灵的作用,就如同药对于我们身体一样。(A is to B what C is to D.)

### 3.10-3.11

- 60-65: ACABCC    66-70: DDBAD    71-75: ACBBC  
 76-80: BACDC    81-85: ADDCD    86-90: BACBB  
 91-95: BABCB    96-100: BADBD    101-105: ACBBB  
 106-110: DAADD    111-115: CCCAB    116-120: CDDBC  
 121-125: BACDB    126-130: DCDCA    131-133: ACA

### 3.12

- |               |                    |                         |
|---------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 134. D/during | 140. C/as          | 146. A/Much as          |
| 135. C/many   | 141. B/the earth's | 147. D/more likely than |
| 136. C/so     | 142. D/higher than | 148. B/greater          |
| 137. B/so     | 143. D/that of     | 149. C/more             |
| 138. A/such   | 144. B/as          | 150. B/dense            |
| 139. B/such   | 146. A/Though      | 151. D/greater          |

## 动词不定式

### 34. 非谓语动词概述

前面三章我们集中讨论了英文中的三大从句。接下来的三章内容我们将集中讨论英文中很重要的动词变化形式——三种非谓语动词形式，即动词不定式(to do)、动名词(doing)和两种分词(现在分词 doing 和过去分词 done)。它们的作用和特点列表如下：

非谓语动词的 三个重点	作成分	逻辑主语	时态、语态变化
不定式	不定式，即“不一定是什 么词性的成分”，可当作 名词、形容词和副词来使 用。因此不定式在句中 能够充当除了谓语之外 的任何其他成分。	见 204 页	见 207 页

动名词	动名词相当于名词,因此在句中主要充当:主语、宾语、表语。	见 261 页	见 264 页
分词	分词相当于形容词和副词,因此在句中主要充当:定语、状语、补足语。	见 277 页	见 285 页
解释	非谓语动词作句中成分 是它们非动词特征的体现,这是我们学习的重点。	非谓语动词作为动词的一种变化形式,仍保留有动词的特征,比如有自己的主语,有时态和语态的变化。	

从上表得知,要求掌握非谓语动词的三个重点内容:句子成分;时态和语态的变化;逻辑主语。

## 第一节 不定式充当的句子成分

### 35. 句型一:It + to do sth(作主语)

#### ► 1. “It + to do sth”句型

不定式作主语,常见的是用 it 作形式主语,放在句首,将真正的主语动词不定式(短语)放在句子后面。

- a. It's easy *to be wise after the event*. 事后诸葛亮容易。
- b. *It is easier to spend money than to make money*. 花钱要比挣钱容易。

- c. It's better *to love someone you can't have* than to have someone you can't love. 爱一个无法拥有的人胜过拥有一个你不爱的人。

**注意**: 此处形式主语 it 不能用 this 或 that 来替换。

- d. This is impossible for people to stare directly at the sun.  
A B C

人们不可能直视太阳。

答案:A。This 改为 It

- e. Due to the refraction of light rays, this is impossible for  
A B  
the naked eye to determine the exact location of a star  
C  
close to the horizon.  
D

正确答案:B。this 应改为 it。

► 2. 不定式结构也可直接置于句首作主语, 此时谓语动词要用单数。

- a. *To err* is human; to forgive, divine. 犯错人皆难免, 宽恕则属超凡。
- b. *To love for the sake of being loved* is human, but *to love for the sake of loving* is angelic. 因为被爱而爱, 是人之常情; 因为爱而爱, 则难能可贵。

### 36. 句型二: 动词 + to do (作宾语)

► 1. 直接跟在一个及物动词后面作宾语。这时句子有以下两个特点:

第一, 句子主语和不定式的逻辑主语是一致的, 即两个动词



所表示的动作都是由全句主语发出。

第二，这时句子的谓语动词多是描写态度；不定式的动词则说明行为。

- a. I *hope* to see you again.
- b. This company *refused* to cooperate with us.
- c. He *promised* not to tell anyone about it.
- d. Why should anyone bother \_\_\_\_\_ his treasure to help a stranger?
  - A. risking to lose
  - B. to risk losing
  - C. risking losing
  - D. to risk to lose

正确答案：B。

英语中常接动词不定式作宾语的动词有：(具体词义和用法请查词典，词典永远是你最好的朋友！)

afford, agree, appear, arrange, ask, attempt, beg, begin, bother, care, choose, consent, dare, decide, determine, expect, fail, forget, happen, hate, help, hesitate, hope, intend, learn, like, love, manage, mean, neglect, offer, prefer, prepare, pretend, promise, propose, refuse, regret, remember, seem, start, swear, trouble, try, want, wish, etc.

- 2. 在一些动词之后，可以在连接代词(what, who, which)或连接副词(how, when, where)及连词 whether 后面接一个带 to 的动词不定式。我们可以将这种结构看成是连接词引导的宾语从句的简略形式。

- a. I wonder *who to* invite. (= who I should invite)
- b. Show us *what to do*. (= what we must do)

c. I don't know *whether to answer* his letter. (此处不用 if)

类似动词还有:ask, consider, decide, discover, explain, forget, find out, guess, imagine, know, learn, observe, remember, see, tell, teach, think, understand, wonder, etc.

### ► 3. 动词+it+宾补(名词或形容词)+宾语 to do(作宾语的不定式后置)

此时,往往用 it 作形式宾语,而将真正的宾语放在宾语补足语后面。常用于此结构中的动词有:consider, think, judge, feel, make, etc.

- a. I think it hard *to answer* the question in one go. 我觉得很难一下子回答这个问题。
- b. He feels it challenging *to be* a marketing supervisor. 他认为担任市场总监很具有挑战性。
- c. Using many symbols makes \_\_\_\_\_ to put a large amount of information on a single map. (TOEFL)
  - A. possible
  - B. it is possible
  - C. it possible
  - D. that possible

正确答案:C。

特别关注:(TOEFL 考试重点!)

一定记住以下三个句型:

句型	例句	解释
1) 动词 + it + 宾补 (名词或形容词) + 宾语 to do	The development of steel nibs <i>makes it possible to</i> <u>develop pens.</u>	不定式作宾语后置 了, 需要形式宾语 it。
2) 动词 + it + 宾补 (名词或形容词) + that 宾语从句	The development of steel nibs <i>makes it possible that</i> <u>people can develop pens.</u>	that 从句作宾语后置 了, 需要形式宾语 it。
3) 动词 + 宾补(名词 或形容词) + 名词宾 语	The development of steel nibs <i>makes possible the de-</i> <u>velopment of pens.</u>	名词短语作宾语后 置了, 不需要形式宾 语 it。
重要结论: 在“宾语 + 宾语补足语”的结构中, 若将不定式宾语或从句宾语 放在补足语后边, 则须加上形式宾语 it; 名词宾语后置, 不能加形式宾语 it。		

### 37. 句型三: 动词 + sb to do sth (作宾语补足语)

#### ► 1. 通常的结构是: 动词 + sb to do sth

- They don't *allow people to smoke* in the theater.
- The chairman *declared the meeting to be* over.
- Allow me to drink* to your success. 让我为你的成功干杯! (祝酒辞, 现在就背下来!)
- Allow me to propose* a toast to our friendship! 我提议为我们的友谊干杯!
- In hot, dry regions, the Sun's heat causes the outer layer of rocks \_\_\_\_\_, process called exfoliation. (TOEFL)  
A. are expanded and peeled away

- B. to expand and peel away  
 C. expanding and peeling away  
 D. they expand and peel away

正确答案:B。

能用于此结构中的动词有:(具体词义和用法请查词典;词典永远是你最好的朋友!)

advice, allow, ask, beg, believe, cause, command, challenge, compel, declare, encourage, expect, forbid, force, get, hate, have, help, instruct, intend, invite, judge, leave, let, like, mean, make, need, oblige, order, permit, persuade, prefer, press, recommend, request, remind, teach, tell, tempt, trouble, want, warn, wish(hope 不可以), urge, etc.

- 2. 在 let, make, have, see, hear, feel, watch, notice, listen to 等动词后面的作宾补的不定式中, to 要省略。(详见“第四节”)

### 38. 句型四:名词 + to do sth(作定语)

不定式作定语一般与被修饰名词有以下三种关系:

#### ► 1. 动宾关系:

即所修饰的名词在逻辑上作不定式的宾语。

例句	解释
I have a <i>letter to write</i> . 我有一封信要写。	逻辑关系相当于: <i>write</i> a letter.

I need some <i>paper to write on</i> . 我需要一些能写字的纸。	逻辑关系相当于: <i>write on</i> some paper.
I need a <i>pen to write with</i> . 我需要一支写字的笔。	逻辑关系相当于: <i>write with</i> a pen
<p>重要结论:从上述例句可看出,由被修饰的名词决定不定式动词是否需要接介词。</p> <p>比如,我们不能说:</p> <p>I need some paper to write.</p> <p>I need a pen to write.</p>	

更多例句:

- a. She has four *children to take care of*.
- b. I had no *place to live in*.
- c. You just regard me as a thing, *an object to look at, to use, to touch*, but not *to listen to* or *to take* seriously. (你只把我当作一件东西,一件任你看,任你用,任你抚摸的东西,但就是不听我的话,不认真对待我。)
- d. I gave the kid *a comic to read*. 我给这孩子一本连环画看。
- e. I have no *partner to speak English with*. 没有伙伴与我一起练习英文。  
不能说成: I have no partner to speak English.

另外要注意的是,因为不定式已经有逻辑宾语,所以不定式动词后不能再加宾语了,比如不能说:

- a. I gave the kid a comic to read *it*.
- b. She has four children to take care of *them*.

## ► 2. 主谓关系:

被 only, last, next, 序数词, 最高级形容词修饰的名词常用不定式作定语, 所修饰的名词与不定式构成逻辑主谓关系。(考试重点)

- a. I don't think he is *the best man to do* the job. 我认为他并不是做这项工作的最佳人选。
- b. *The next train to arrive* is from New York. 下一列到达的火车是从纽约开来的。
- c. Clint was *the second person to fall* into this trap. Clint 是第二个掉进陷阱的人。
- d. Clint was *the only person to survive* the air crash. Clint 是这次空难事故中惟一的幸存者。

## ► 3. 同位关系:(两类名词)

1) 与动词相关的名词:要求与不定式连用的动词, 它的名词形式也要接不定式。常见的这样的名词有: arrangement, attempt, claim, decision, hope, determination, failure, need, plan, promise, refusal, resolution, tendency, threat, wish, etc.	
He <i>refused to</i> co-operate with us. 他拒绝与我们合作。	His <i>refusal to co-operate</i> makes us angry. 他拒绝与我们合作, 这让我们很生气。
I don't <i>wish to change</i> . 我不愿意改变。	I have no <i>wish to change</i> . 我不愿意改变。

2) 与形容词相关的名词:要求与不定式连用的形容词,它的名词形式也要接不定式。这样的名词有:ability, ambition, anxiety, eagerness, inclination, reluctance, etc.	
She was <i>reluctant to accept</i> his invitation. 她很不愿意接受他的邀请。	Her <i>reluctance to accept</i> his invitation upset him. 她很不愿意接受他的邀请,这使他很恼火。
They were <i>eager to help</i> me. 他们非常热心地帮助我。	Their <i>eagerness to help</i> pleased me. 他们的热心帮助真让我高兴。

- a. A decision \_\_\_\_\_ stock by one or a few of these large companies may have a very important effect on the market as a whole. (考研题)

A. buying or to sell  
B. to buy or selling  
C. buying or selling  
D. to buy or sell

分析:因为 decide 后边要接 to do, 所以名词 decision 后边也须接 to do。故选 D。

- b. All our attempts \_\_\_\_\_ the child from drowning were in vain.

A. to rescue  
B. having rescued  
C. rescue  
D. being rescued

分析:因为 attempt 后边要接 to do, 所以名词 attempt 后边也须接 to do。故选 A。

- c. According to Darwin, random changes that enhance  
a species' ability for surviving are naturally selected and

A

B

C

passed on to succeeding generations.

D

分析:因为 able 后边要接 to do, 所以名词 ability 后边也  
须接 to do。故把 B 改为:to survive.

### 39. 句型五:形容词 + to do sth

#### ► 1. 句子主语和不定式动词可构成逻辑上的动宾关系。

我们先分析下面这个例句:

*She is interesting to listen to.*

请暂停,先思考一下这句话的含义!我们给你两个选项:

A. 她对听别人讲话很感兴趣。

B. 听她讲话很有趣。

其实,这句话相当于说:

*It is interesting to listen to her.*

意思是:听她讲话很有趣。

因此,原句的主语 she 在逻辑上是作不定式 to listen to 的  
宾语。

更多例句:

a. *Relativity theory isn't easy to understand.* = *It isn't  
easy to understand relativity theory.* 相对论不好理解。

b. *She is very nice to talk to.* = *It is very nice to talk to her.*  
和她聊天很开心。

c. *Mary is easy to get on with.* = *It is easy to get on with*



Mary. 玛丽很容易相处。

d. English is difficult to speak. 说好英文不容易。

e. Football is very interesting to watch. 看足球很有趣。

句子主语与不定式动词存在这种动宾关系的情况下，我们要注意以下三点：

1) 不定式动词一般不用被动式：(最容易出错)

a. English is difficult to be spoken. \*

b. Football is interesting to be watched. \*

2) 不定式后不能再加宾语：

a. Football is very interesting to watch it. \*

b. She is nice to talk to her. \*

3) 不定式动词所带的介词不能省略：

a. She is interesting to listen. \* --

b. She is easy to get on. \*

## ► 2. 句子主语和不定式动词可构成逻辑上的主谓关系。

这一句型中的形容词通常表示人的性格特征或行为表现。如：brave, careful, careless, clever, considerate, cruel, foolish, generous, kind, modest, nice, polite, rude, selfish, silly, stupid, thoughtful 等。

a. He was kind to help us.

b. The boy was careless to break the window.

这时句子可用以下两种方式来改写：

such... as to do	He was <i>so kind as to</i> help us. The boy was <i>so careless as to</i> break the window.
It is/was + 形容词 + of sb to do	It was kind of him to help us. It was careless of the boy to break the window.

但注意,并不是所有的形容词都能这样改写! 这得取决于特定形容词的用法。

#### 40. 不定式作状语

动词不定式作状语, 主要表示目的、结果和条件。

##### ► 1. 作目的状语

- Hating people is like burning down your own house *to get* rid of a rat. 憎恨别人, 就好像为了赶走一只老鼠, 而把自己的房子烧掉。
- To avoid* criticism, do nothing, say nothing, be nothing.
- To acquire* knowledge, one must study; but *to acquire* wisdom, one must observe.
- We had better start early *to catch* the train.
- I went to the post office *to mail* a letter.
- I'd climb the highest mountain, just *to see* you smile. I'd swim the ocean, just *to hold* your hand. I'd run a million miles, just *to be* with you forever.

我们可用 *in order to do* 或 *so as to do* 强调目的状语。

- a. We had better start early *so as to* catch the train.
- b. I went to the post office *in order to mail* a letter.
- c. I quote others *in order better* to express my own self.  
(我引用别人的话,是为了更好地表达自己。)
- d. The teacher raised her voice *in order for us to* hear more clearly.

**注意**: *so as to* 一般不用在句首。但 *to do* 或 *in order to do* 可提到句首。

## ► 2. 作结果状语

1) Only to do... 引出意想不到或不愉快的结果(4、6级考试重点)

- a. We hurried to the railway station, *only to find* the train had just left. 我们匆匆忙忙赶到火车站,结果却发现火车刚刚离站。
- b. All too often, women complain that they're educated as equals, *only to* go out into the workforce to be treated as inferiors. 女人往往抱怨说,她们和男人们接受同样的教育,结果在职业场上却被认为低人一等。
- c. He worked very hard, \_\_\_\_\_ he had not finished half of the job.  
A. to find  
B. finding  
C. just finding  
D. only to find  
正确答案:D。

2) 在下列结构中表示结果: *so...as to*, *such as to*, 注意不要

漏掉 as。

- a. Her story is *such as to* arouse our sympathy. = Her story is *so sad as to*...
- b. His indifference is such as to make everyone despair.
- c. He is so indifferent as to make everyone despair.
- d. She looks so beautiful as to attract all of us.
- e. She had such a good friend as to help her when she was in trouble.
- f. Her voice is *such as to* make everyone stare. = Her voice is *so loud / bad as to* make everyone stare.

### 3) *enough...to*

- a. He is not old enough to go to school. 他还没有到上学的年龄。
- b. The teacher speaks loudly enough to make himself heard clearly.

### 4) *too...to* 结构

(1) 这一结构我们常熟悉的意思是“太…以致不能…”，肯定形式，否定意思。

- a. The box is too heavy for me to even move. 这箱子太沉了，我挪动不了。
- b. The tea is too hot to drink.

(2) *too ready/anxious/eager to do*, 在此结构中，因为 *too* 不是修饰形容词 *ready/anxious/eager*，而是修饰整个 *ready/anxious/eager to do*，故此结构意味“非常想…，急于…，时刻准备…”等意思，肯定形式，肯定意思。

- a. You are too ready to find faults with other people.  
(你也太爱找别人茬儿了)
- b. I'm just too eager to help you. (我非常乐意帮助)

你)

(3) too 前若有 only, all, but, really 修饰时, 这结构亦表示肯定。

a. I am *only too pleased* to help you.

b. He would be *only too glad* to be her boyfriend, but he knew he couldn't match her in family status. 他何尝不想成为她的男朋友, 但他知道他的门第配不上她。

### ► 3. 用作条件状语

当不定式表示条件时, 句子谓语通常含有助动词, 如: will, would, shall, should, must, can, could 等。

a. You would be stupid not to ask for a raise. 如果你不求涨工资, 那真是愚蠢。

这句话相当于: You would be stupid if you don't ask for a raise.

b. One must be out of his mind *to do such a thing*. (= ... if he does such a thing)

c. I would have been happy *to be invited* to the party. (= ... if I had been invited. ... But I was not invited. 这是虚拟语气)

d. The father will be proud *for his son to win the gold medal*. (= ... if his son wins the gold medal. 不定式带有自己的逻辑主语。)

## 41. 用作独立成分

动词不定式可用作独立成分, 用来修饰整个句子, 常见的有:

to begin with, to tell the truth, to make a long story short, so to speak, to be brief/exact/frank/honest, to say nothing of (姑且不说), to say the least(至少可以这么说)

以上所列短语均为口语中常用短语。请脱口而出!

- a. *To begin with*, on behalf of (代表) all of your American guests, I wish to thank you for the incomparable (无可比拟的) hospitality. 首先, 我谨代表你们的所有美国客人向你们表示感谢, 感谢你们无可比拟的盛情款待。(尼克松 1972 年访华时的祝酒词开篇)
- b. —You're in pretty lousy mood, huh?  
—To say the least.
- c. I have a point there, to say the least.
- d. To make a long story short, he is in hospital now.

## 第二节 不定式逻辑主语

### 42. 不定式逻辑主语

#### ► 1. 何谓逻辑主语?

对于三种非谓语动词而言, 都有一个逻辑主语的问题, 这是因为它们都是动词的变化形式, 既然是动词就应该有动作的执行者, 即主语。之所以称之为逻辑主语, 这是为了区别于句子主语。因为句子主语和非谓语动词的逻辑主语并不总是统一的(有时是一样的, 有时不一样)。请比较:

例句	解释
He was anxious <i>to meet you</i> . 他渴望认识你。	句子主语是 he; 不定式 to meet 动作也是由 he 发出, 因此 he 也是不定式的逻辑主语。此时, 我们说: 句子主语和不定式逻辑主语一致。
He was anxious <i>for his sister to meet you</i> . 他渴望让他妹妹认识你。	句子主语是 he; 不定式 to meet 动作不是由 he 发出, 而是由 his sister 发出, 因此 his sister 是不定式的逻辑主语。此时, 我们说: 句子主语 he 和不定式逻辑主语 his sister 不一致。

对于动名词和分词, 同样存在句子主语和逻辑主语或一致, 或不一致的两种情形。具体后文讨论, 在此先分析不定式的逻辑主语。

## ► 2. for sb to do

不定式的逻辑主语常见的是由“for + 名词或代词”引出, 这里的“名词或代词”即是不定式的逻辑主语, 来说明不定式动作的执行者。例如:

- a. It's important *for you* to go there in person. 你有必要亲自去那儿一趟。
- b. It is very common *for him* to be absent without leave.  
不请假就擅自离开是他的一贯作风。
- c. He was very willing *for everyone else* to come. 他很愿意让其他所有的人都来。
- d. *For any adhesive* to make a really strong bond, the sur-

faces to be glued must be absolutely clean and free from moisture or grease. 对于任何粘合剂, 要想粘得牢固的话, 则被粘的表面必须绝对清洁且不能潮湿和有油性物质。

- e. The father will be proud *for his son to win the gold medal*.  
(= ...if his son wins the gold medal.)
- f. The eye of an animal is quite easy to see. How then can the eyes be prevented from spoiling the animal's blending with its environment? One solution would be *for the animal to keep* its eyes closed when danger threatens.

下列句子因为不定式的逻辑主语不明确而显得不规范, 因此在写作文时要避免。例如:

- a. To study English well, a lot of practices are needed. \*
- b. A lot of practices are needed to study English well. \*

“要想学好英文, 大量练习是必要的。”这完全是受汉语思维影响而写出的句子。

以上两句均因句子主语“a lot of practices”不能作不定式 to study 的逻辑主语而显得不规范。上面两句可以说成:

- a. To study English well, **you** need a lot of practices.
- b. A lot of practices are needed *for you* to study English well.
- c. *For you* to study English well, a lot of practices are needed.

### ► 3. of sb to do

用来说明人的性格特征或行为表现的动态形容词与不定式连



用时，用“of + 名词或代词”这一结构引出不定式的逻辑主语。这样的形容词主要有：brave, careful, careless, clever, cruel, foolish, generous, kind, modest, nice, polite, rude, selfish, silly, stupid, thoughtful 等。

- a. It's wise *of you* not to argue with your boss.
- b. It's generous *of him* to lend me his car.
- c. It was very careless *of him* to make such silly mistakes.

**for 和 of 的使用规律是：**看句中的表语形容词是着重说明人（逻辑主语）还是事（不定式短语）。若是前者，则用 of；若是后者，则用 for。且用 of 的句子，可以用人作主语将句子改写；用 for 的句子则不能。试比较：

- a. You are important to go there in person. （错误）
- b. It's important for you to go there in person.
- c. You are wise not to argue with your boss. （逻辑关系正确）
- d. It's wise of you not to argue with your boss.

### 第三节 不定式的时态与语态

#### 43. 不定式的时态

##### ► 1. 不定式时态、语态的构成

不定式的时态、语态是不定式作为动词的特征体现。英文中把动作分为四种不同的完成程度：一般动作，进行动作，完成动作和完成进行动作。同理，不定式也具备这四种形式。不定式同样还有语态方面的变化。现列表如下：

四种形式	主动	被动
一般式	to write	to be written
完成式	to have written	to have been written
进行式	to be writing	一般不用
完成进行式	to have been writing	一般不用

## ► 2. 不定式一般式(to do)

不定式的一般形式 to do 所表示的动作通常:

1) 与主要谓语所表示的动作或状态同时或几乎同时发生:

a. I am glad to see you.

b. I heard him sing last night.

2) 或是在主要谓语动作之后发生:

We plan to go to the sea this summer.

## ► 3. 不定式的完成式(to have done)(4、6 级的重要考点)

不定式的完成式可表示:

1) 发生在谓语之前的动作:

由以上得知,不定式的一般式不能表示发生在谓语之前的动作,若要表示不定式的动作比谓语动作先发生,则不定式要用它的完成式 to have done。例如:

a. We are happy **to have visited** so many historic places in Beijing. 在北京参观了那么多的名胜古迹,我们感到很开心。

b. Humans are believed **to have evolved** from the primate species. 人们相信,人类是由灵长类动物进化过来的。

c. Albert Einstein, the great American scientist, is estimated

to *have had* the incredible intelligence quotient of 200.

据估计,爱因斯坦的智商高达 200,这真让人难以置信。

- d. The rain seems to *have stopped*. It means the rain *seems now to have stopped a few minutes ago*.
  - e. I am very sorry to *have bothered* you with so many questions on such an occasion. (99-6 CET-4)
  - f. I am sorry not to *have come* on Thursday. (= I am sorry that I *didn't come* on Thursday.)
  - g. The redwood appears \_\_\_\_\_ some 100 years ago in northern forests around the world. (TOEFL)
- A. having to flourish
  - B. to flourish
  - C. to have flourished
  - D. have flourished

分析:句子谓语 appears 表示现在,而 some 100 years ago 表示不定式动作发生在过去,故选 C。

## 2) 表示“非真实”的过去

用在表示打算、需要、计划等动词的过去时后面,表示过去本打算做但事实上没有实现的动作。这些动词有:mean, intend, think, plan, hope, wish, propose, etc.

- a. I meant to *have telephoned*, but I forgot. 我本来打算打电话的,但是我忘记了。
- b. I planned to *have visited* you last night, but I was too busy. 我昨晚本来想去看你,但太忙了。

我们还可用下边两种结构表达同一意思:

- A. was/were to have done, would like to have done, should like to have done

- a. I was to have visited you last night.
- b. I was to have telephoned, but I forgot.

B. 过去完成时 + to do

用上述动词的过去完成时态来表示此义,但此时不定式不可用完成式,而要用一般式 to do.

- a. I had intended *to see* you, but I was busy.

不说:

I had intended *to have seen* you, but I was busy. \*

- b. He was to \_\_\_\_\_ to a foreign university but the war prevented.

A. have gone

B. go

C. be going

D. have been going

正确答案:A。

因此,表示“过去想做而实际未做成”的事,有下述三种表达方式:

- A. was/were to have done, would like to have done, should like to have done
- B. intended (meant, designed, hoped, planned, thought, wished, proposed) + to have done
- C. had intended (meant, designed, hoped, planned, thought, wished, proposed) + to do.

3)偶尔表示“将来”

- a. She hopes to *have finished* the work by the time he comes back. 她希望在他回来之前把这些工作都做完。

这句话本来是由宾语从句转换而来的:

She hopes that she *will have finished* the work by the time he comes back.

由于句中 by the time 对应的主句一般用完成时态,因此改成不定式也要用不定式的完成式,这时,表示的是一个将来完成的动作。

#### ► 4. 不定式的进行式(to be doing)(不常用)

不定式的进行式可表示:

##### 1) 正在进行的动作

通常用在 appear, happen, pretend, seem 等动词之后。如同进行时态那样,动词不定式的进行式(to be doing)用于描写在我们谈论的时间(现在或过去)正在继续的动作,或说与谓语动作同时发生的动作。例如:

- a. He pretended *to be listening* attentively when the teacher came by. 当老师走过时,他假装正在专心听讲。  
此句相当于:He pretended that he *was listening* attentively...
- b. He pretended *to be sleeping* when she came in.
- c. He happened *to be singing* in the room when I came in this morning.

##### 2) 反复发生的一般性动作

因为进行时态可以表示一个最近一段时间内持续的一般性动作,同样,不定式进行式可表示一种反复发生的一般性动作,此时带有很强的感情色彩:

- a. In the 1980's and early 1990's, athletes entering international sports competitions seemed *to be getting* younger and younger. Talented young athletes... boys and girls... were spotted early on in their school career, and

were given special training.

- b. I'd rather read than watch television; the programs seem \_\_\_\_\_ all the time. (97-1 CET-4)

A. to get worse  
B. to be getting worse  
C. to have got worse  
D. getting worse

正确答案:B。

#### ► 5. 不定式完成进行式(to have been doing)(较少用到)

表示在谓语动作之前已经开始并且一直在持续进行的某一动作。例如:

- a. They are said *to have been collecting* folk songs in Yunnan.  
= It is said that they have been collecting folk songs in Yunnan. 据说他们一直在云南收集民歌。  
b. He seems *to have been sitting* there all day.  
c. I seem *to have been learning* English for over ten years.  
d. The little girl seems to *have been watching* TV all this evening.

### 44. 不定式的语态

- 1. 一般来讲,在句中若出现了不定式动作的执行者时,则不定式用主动形式。若没有执行者或不定式所修饰的成分是不定式动作的承受者,则不定式用被动形式。

比较:

主动	被动
<p>He wants someone <i>to take</i> photographs.</p> <p>他想找人拍几张照片。(是 someone 执行 take 动作)</p>	<p>He wants photographs <i>to be taken</i>.</p> <p>他想拍几张照片。 (不是 he 拍照, 所以照片 be taken)</p>
<p>I have three letters <i>to write</i> today.</p> <p>我今天要写三封信。 (是由 I 来执行 write 动作)</p>	<p>I want the letters <i>to be typed</i> at once.</p> <p>我想找人立即把这些信件打印出来。 (不是 I 来 type, 对 the letters 来说就是 be typed)</p>

更多例句:

- a. I have a lot of clothes *to wash*. (由 I 来 wash, I 是动作的执行者)
- b. The box is too heavy for me *to carry*.
- c. She doesn't like *to be treated* as a distinguished guest.  
(She 是动作 *treat* 的承受者)
- d. No one hoped *to be laughed at* like that.
- e. These sheets are *to be washed*.
- f. This form is *to be filled out* in ink.
- g. It's an honor for me *to be invited* to address the international conference.
- h. It is necessary for us *to be constantly reminded* of our shortcomings. (不定式作主语)经常有人提醒自己注意缺点,这是必要的。
- i. She asked *to be given* an easy assignment. (作宾语)她要求分给她一份轻松点儿的活儿。
- j. He wanted the letter *to be delivered* at once. (作宾补)他

想让信立即发出。

- k. She was too old *to be assigned* such work. (作状语)她年纪大了,不适宜做这份工作。
- l. It is known that electrical and chemical energy began \_\_\_\_\_ systematically in the last century.
- A. study
- B. to study
- C. to be studied
- D. studied

正确答案:C。

- m. Mr. Johnson preferred \_\_\_\_\_ heavier work to do.  
(9306CET-4)
- A. to be given
- B. to be giving
- C. to have given
- D. having given

正确答案:A。

► 2. 形容词后边的不定式通常用不定式的主动形式表示被动意思。

- a. English is difficult *to speak*.
- b. Relativity theory is hard *to understand*.
- c. The box is too heavy *to move*.
- d. The sentence was difficult *to translate*.
- e. This *magazine* is interesting *to read*. = I found the *magazine* interesting *to read*.



► 3. to let(出租), to blame(责备)

---

这两个短语是固定用法,主动形式表示被动意思。

- a. You should be to blame for it.
- b. The house is to let.

► 4. 不定式完成被动式及双重被动结构

---

完成被动式:

- a. The book is said *to have been published*.
- b. The construction is reported *to have been completed*.

双重被动式:

- c. The book *is said to have been published*.
- d. The construction *is reported to have been completed*.
- e. The book *is not allowed to be taken* out of the library.

(双重被动结构)

比较:(单一被动)

- f. You *are not allowed* to smoke here.
- g. You *are not allowed* to take the exam paper out of the classroom.

可用于这种结构的动词有:allow, announce, attempt, believe, desire, enable, expect, intend, mean, order, permit, propose, report, say, etc.

- h. The Bunsen burner is so named because it is thought to \_\_\_\_\_ by Robert Bunsen, who was German by birth.

(TOEFL)

- A. be invented
- B. have been invented
- C. have invented

D. invent

正确答案:B。

i. The bank is reported in the local newspaper \_\_\_\_\_ in broad daylight yesterday. (2000 年 12 CET-4)

A. To be robbed

B. to have been robbed

C. being robbed

D. having been robbed

正确答案:B。

## 第四节 省去 TO 的不定式

### 45. 不带 to 的不定式

在下列几种情况下不定式要省略 to:

#### ► 1. 在下列动词的复合宾语中

1) 感官动词(perceptual verb): see, hear, watch, notice, feel, observe

2) 使役动词(causative verb): let, make, have

a. The teacher *has* us *write* a composition every week.

b. I *saw* a man *enter* the shop.

c. They are going to have the serviceman \_\_\_\_\_ an electric fan in the office tomorrow. (9801 CET-4)

A. install

B. to install

C. to be installed

D. installed

正确答案:A。

d. The minister had his secretaries \_\_\_\_\_ a press conference.

A. arrange

B. to arrange

C. arranging

D. arranged

正确答案:A。

上述动词若转换为被动结构时,其后不定式需加 to.

e. A man was seen to enter the shop.

3) 在 help, listen to, look at 后边可用 to,也可不用 to。

a. Would you like to listen to me(to) read the poem?

b. The teacher will help you (to) study English well.

## ► 2. 在下列一些短语句型中

had better, would rather, would sooner, would just as soon, might (just) as well, cannot but, cannot choose but, cannot help but, etc.

a. I cannot but admire his courage.

b. We might as well put up here for tonight.

c. It all started so innocently that warm June night, when I first met you, you looked so beautiful and lovely that I *couldn't help but fall* in love with you, even though we both agreed our worlds were far apart, and could never be one.

► 3. 在 *rather than*, *other than*, *than* 后加不带 *to* 的不定式

- a. Rather than wait anymore, I decided to go home by taxi.
- b. Rather than go on with his work, he went home.
- c. No one could do other than admire it.
- d. To my great surprise, she preferred to give herself up  
\_\_\_\_\_ herself.

- A. than hiding
- B. rather than to hide
- C. to hiding
- D. rather than hide

正确答案:D。

- e. In the course of a day students do far more than just  
\_\_\_\_\_ classes. (9306CET-4)

- A. attend
- B. attended
- C. to attend
- D. attending

正确答案:A。

► 4. 在 *Do nothing/anything/everything but do* 句型中。

- a. I have nothing to do *but wait*.
- b. I have no choice but *to wait*. (若 *but* 前没有 *do*, 则不定式加 *to*)
- c. He needs nothing but *to succeed*.
- d. He will do anything *but give* in. (他决不会屈服)
- e. That was so serious a matter that I had no choice but  
\_\_\_\_\_ the police. (96-1 CET-4)

- A. called in

B. calling in

C. call in

D. to call in

正确答案:D。

- f. Having missed that last bus, Bob had no alternative \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi home though he did not like the idea. (CET-4)

A. but to take

B. take to but

C. to but take

D. to take but

正确答案:A。

还有在解释 do 的精确含义的名词从句和定语从句作主语的句子中, be 动词后直接加 do。

- g. All that I could do then *was wait*.

- h. What I could do then *was wait*.

- i. All you do now is *complete* this form.

- j. No mountains too high for you to climb. All you have to do *is have* some climbing faith. No rivers too wide for you to make it across. All you have to do *is believe* it when you pray.

- k. Husband: I have a very demanding job. I'm tired when I get home.

Wife: I also have a demanding job, but I'm expected to come home from the office and cook, care for the children and clean the house. All you do is *sit and watch* television and complain about how tired you are.

### ► 5. Why (not) + do? 句子中

Why do sth? 含有责怪之意,通常表明做某事是无意义或愚蠢的。

a. —I really hate to write the essay Professor Smith assigned us.

—Why bother then?

b. Why pay to see that movie, since you can see it on TV for nothing.

Why not do sth? 表示建议

Why not take a holiday?

### ► 6. 两个动词由 and, or, but 等连接时,为了避免重复而省去 to

a. I'd like to lie down and go to sleep.

b. Do you want to have lunch now or wait till later?

c. I haven't decided whether to go home or stay at school during the coming summer vacation.

在这种情况下,若两个不定式动词有对比之义,则均须加 to.

d. It is the greatest happiness on earth *to love* and *to be loved*.

e. *To play fair* is as important as *to play well*.

f. I came not *to praise*, but *to scold* you.

g. He likes *to be* respected, not *to respect* others.

## 46. 分裂不定式

所谓分裂不定式,即 to 与动词之间插入了一个副词。如:

a. He liked to *half* close his eyes.

- b. He began to *slowly* get up off the floor. 他开始慢慢地从地上爬起来。

但有人认为用这种分裂不定式是“文风恶劣”，尤其在正式文体中应尽量加以避免，而把副词放在 to 之前或句子末尾。

- c. He began slowly to get up off the floor.

但是，有时为了准确表达不定式的意思，我们可能只好用分裂不定式，因为，这种改动可能会引起意思的改变。请比较下例：

The United Nations is expected *to strongly* condemn such action.

人们期望联合国强烈谴责这种行为。

The United Nations is expected *strongly to* condemn such action.

人们强烈期望联合国谴责这种行为。

第四章 不定式综合练习

4.1 单项选择(不定式作主语和宾语)

1. Sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ to place physics and chemistry into separate categories.  
A. that is difficult  
B. is difficult  
C. it is difficult  
D. that it is difficult
2. The teachers don't know \_\_\_\_\_ to start and run a school.  
A. what it takes  
B. what they take  
C. what does it take  
D. what takes
3. Because air is highly compressible, \_\_\_\_\_ to define a clear upper boundary of the atmosphere.  
A. it is impossible  
B. impossible is  
C. so the impossible  
D. is the impossibility
4. The Homestead Act of 1862 \_\_\_\_\_ to acquire land at a small cost.  
A. made possible  
B. made it possible  
C. made the possibility  
D. possibly made
5. To what extent will future scientific discoveries \_\_\_\_\_



- possible the lengthening of the human life?
- A. be made
  - B. make it
  - C. make
  - D. be made it
6. X-rays are able to pass through objects and thus make \_\_\_\_\_ details that are otherwise impossible.
- A. it visible
  - B. them visible
  - C. visibly
  - D. visible
7. Digital recording has made \_\_\_\_\_ a significantly wider dynamic range in recorded music.
- A. for the possibility
  - B. the possibility is
  - C. it is possible
  - D. possible
8. The discovery of the halftone process in photography in 1881 made \_\_\_\_\_ photographs in books and newspapers.
- A. the possible reproduction
  - B. possible to reproduce
  - C. it possible to reproduce
  - D. possibly reproduced

#### 4.2 单项选择(不定式作定语)

9. Their little bit of land doesn't provide enough food to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. live on
  - B. live

- C. live in  
D. live up
10. I got out some more chairs for the other guests \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to sit  
B. to sit on  
C. sit on  
D. sit
11. I need a piece of paper to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. write on  
B. write  
C. be written  
D. write with
12. He was the first \_\_\_\_\_ and the last \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. arriving...leaving  
B. to arrive...to leave  
C. arrive...leave  
D. for arriving...for leaving
13. Air pollution has been greatly reduced, so this city is still \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a good place to live  
B. a good place to live in  
C. a good place to be lived in  
D. a good place for living in
14. I have no place \_\_\_\_\_ and no food \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to live... to eat  
B. to live in... to eat  
C. to live in... to eat at  
D. living in... eating
15. Her failure \_\_\_\_\_ into college disappointed her parents.

- A. getting
  - B. to get
  - C. get
  - D. of getting
16. His refusal \_\_\_\_\_ surprised us.
- A. of helping
  - B. with help
  - C. to help
  - D. of help
17. I have been working hard, with the determination \_\_\_\_\_ something of myself.
- A. making
  - B. of making
  - C. to make
  - D. in making

#### 4.3 单项选择(不定式逻辑主语)

18. It is wise \_\_\_\_\_ the experiment that way.
- A. of him to do
  - B. for him to do
  - C. of his doing
  - D. that he do
19. \_\_\_\_\_ any aspect of society, the sociologist must determine the laws influencing human behavior in social contexts.
- A. Explain
  - B. To explain
  - C. One explains
  - D. The explanation of

20. \_\_\_\_\_ as a masterpiece, a work of art must transcend the ideals of the period in which it was created.
- A. To rank
  - B. The ranking
  - C. To be ranked
  - D. For being ranked
21. \_\_\_\_\_ the demands of aerospace, medicine, and agriculture, engineers are creating exotic new metallic substances.
- A. Meet
  - B. Being met are
  - C. To meet
  - D. They are meeting

**4.4 用括号中动词的适当形式填空(不定式时态)**

22. Nero, who was Emperor of Rome from 54 to 68 A.D., is believed to \_\_\_\_\_ (murder) both his mother and his wife.
23. They seem to \_\_\_\_\_ (make) much progress in their English study.
24. We are happy to \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) so many historic spots in Beijing.
25. We didn't expect you to \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for us here.
26. They are proud to \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the football match.
27. You look tired. You seem to \_\_\_\_\_ (work) too hard all day.
28. A: I thought Sam was sick.  
B: So did I. But he seems to \_\_\_\_\_ (recover) very quickly. He certainly doesn't seem to be sick now.

29. I really have enjoyed our conversation, but I have to leave now. I'm very happy to \_\_\_\_\_ (have) this opportunity to meet you and talk with you. Let's try to get together again soon.
30. I am glad that my company sent me to another country to study. I am very pleased to \_\_\_\_\_ (give) the opportunity to learn about another culture.
31. Clint is fortunate to \_\_\_\_\_ (give) a scholarship.
32. —Do you believe that Charlie did best in the exam?  
—Yes. He is said \_\_\_\_\_ (work) very hard.

#### 4.5 用括号中动词的适当形式填空(不定式语态)

33. A: This letter needs to \_\_\_\_\_ (send) immediately. Will you take care of it?  
B: Right away.
34. He asked to \_\_\_\_\_ (send) to work in Tibet.
35. It is easy to \_\_\_\_\_ (fool) by his lies.
36. "I considered it an honor to \_\_\_\_\_ (invite) to address the meeting of world-famous scientists," said Professor Leacock.
37. Don't all of us want to \_\_\_\_\_ (love) and \_\_\_\_\_ (need) by other people?
38. Clint wants us to tell him the news as soon as we hear anything. He wants to \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) about it immediately.
39. Give him some books to \_\_\_\_\_ (read).
40. The house is to \_\_\_\_\_ (let).
41. The reason is not far to \_\_\_\_\_ (seek).
42. The magazine is interesting to \_\_\_\_\_ (read).

43. It is necessary for us to \_\_\_\_\_ (constantly, remind) of our shortcomings.  
44. The report is difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ (write).  
45. Everyone hates to \_\_\_\_\_ (use).  
46. They found the lecture hard to \_\_\_\_\_ (understand).

#### 4.6 用括号中动词的适当形式填空(是否省去 to)

47. The boy was made \_\_\_\_\_ (sing) the song once again.  
48. Don't make children \_\_\_\_\_ (work) too hard.  
49. They would rather \_\_\_\_\_ (die) than \_\_\_\_\_ (surrender).  
50. He could not choose but \_\_\_\_\_ (love) her.  
51. She could do nothing but \_\_\_\_\_ (change) her name under the circumstances.  
52. He had his son \_\_\_\_\_ (play) the violin three hours a day.  
53. There was nothing to do except \_\_\_\_\_ (escape) .  
54. He has no alternative but \_\_\_\_\_ (go) and ask his sister for help.  
55. If he is not willing to be with you, why \_\_\_\_\_ (not, ask) somebody else?  
56. Since he is only a kid, why \_\_\_\_\_ (make) fun of him?  
57. A: What can you see in a park?  
B: I can see birds \_\_\_\_\_ (fly) in the sky and sometimes I can see people \_\_\_\_\_ (do) shadowboxing.  
A: Do you hear anything in the park?  
B: Yes, I can hear people \_\_\_\_\_ (chat) here and there and sometimes I can hear young people \_\_\_\_\_ (speak) English at the English corner.

#### 4.7 翻译下列句子,注意句中副词的位置(分裂不定式)

- 58. The boy liked to half close his eyes.
- 59. She was too ill to really carry out her duty.
- 60. The young man prepared to silently accompany her.
- 61. It is too heavy for me to even move.
- 62. He made up his mind to once more have a proposal to her.
- 63. I am required to carefully take the vase out of the bag.
- 64. The soldier is expected to firmly complete his task.

#### 4.8 单项选择(综合练习)

- 65. On Saturday afternoon, Mrs. Green went to the market, \_\_\_\_\_ some bananas and visited her cousin.
  - A. bought
  - B. buying
  - C. to buy
  - D. buy
- 66. We will have to get the Dean \_\_\_\_\_ this form.
  - A. to sign
  - B. sign
  - C. signed
  - D. signing
- 67. She is having her car \_\_\_\_\_ this week.
  - A. to repair
  - B. repair
  - C. repaired
  - D. repairing
- 68. The doctor had the patient \_\_\_\_\_ on at once.
  - A. operate

- B. operated  
C. to operate  
D. operating
69. My sister's professor had her \_\_\_\_\_ her paper many times before allowing her to present it to the committee.  
A. rewritten  
B. to rewrite  
C. rewrite  
D. rewriting
70. The teacher had the students \_\_\_\_\_ their homework every day.  
A. do  
B. to do  
C. done  
D. doing
71. We're leaving at six o'clock in the morning, and hope to \_\_\_\_\_ most of the journey by lunch time.  
A. be doing  
B. have done  
C. have been done  
D. do
72. A membership card authorizes \_\_\_\_\_ the club's facilities of a period of 12 months.  
A. the holder using  
B. the holder's use  
C. the holder to use  
D. the holder uses
73. He asked \_\_\_\_\_ since he had been chairman for seven years.



- A. not to have been re-elected  
B. to be not re-elected  
C. not to be re-elected  
D. to have not been re-elected
74. The police were tracking the criminal who was said \_\_\_\_\_ in a nearby wood.  
A. have hidden  
B. to be hiding  
C. to hiding  
D. to hide
75. At the Seventh International Ballet Competitions, Fernando Bujones won the first gold medal ever \_\_\_\_\_ to a United States male dancer. (p3-10)  
A. to be awarded  
B. to award  
C. that awards  
D. should be awarding
76. "I was arguing with him about our plan just now."  
"Why \_\_\_\_\_ with him? He'll never change his mind."  
A. arguing  
B. argue  
C. to argue  
D. you argue
77. It is extremely important for an engineer to know \_\_\_\_\_ a computer.  
A. use  
B. to use  
C. how to use  
D. using

78. The ancient Egyptians are supposed \_\_\_\_ rockets to the room.  
A. to send  
B. to be sending  
C. to have sent  
D. to have been sending
79. He prefers to stay here \_\_\_\_\_ go home.  
A. than to  
B. rather than  
C. rather than to  
D. than
80. The use of well-chosen nonsense words makes \_\_\_\_\_ the testing of many basic hypotheses in the field of language learning.  
A. it is possible  
B. it possible  
C. possible  
D. them possible
81. I should very much like to have gone to the party, but I \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. was not invited  
B. am not invited  
C. shall not be invited  
D. am not being invited
82. All too often, women complain that they're educated as equals, only to go out into the workforce \_\_\_\_\_ as inferiors.  
A. to treat  
B. to be treated

- C. be treated  
D. treat
83. After twenty years abroad, William came back only \_\_\_\_\_ his hometown severely damaged in an earthquake.  
A. finding  
B. to find  
C. was finding  
D. was to find
84. They were believed \_\_\_\_\_ the problem beforehand.  
A. to discuss  
B. in discussing  
C. to have discussed  
D. to have been discussed
85. \_\_\_\_\_ money in such a dishonest way, he would beg in the streets.  
A. Rather than getting  
B. Rather than to get  
C. Rather than get  
D. More than get
86. He came all the way to help her \_\_\_\_\_ that she drowned herself in a well.  
A. only to find  
B. to find  
C. in order to find  
D. so as to find
87. He preferred \_\_\_\_\_ with that Managing Editor.  
A. not to identifying  
B. identify himself

- C. identity  
D. not to identify himself
88. Caught in the act, he had no alternative but \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. confess  
B. confessing  
C. confessed  
D. to confess
89. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ smoking as soon as possible.  
A. quitting  
B. had quit  
C. quit  
D. to quit
90. I'd rather that you \_\_\_\_\_ the bike. If only I had more time, I would repair it myself.  
A. repairing  
B. repaired  
C. to repair  
D. will repair
91. It is heartening to see millions who had nothing but a record of misery and hunger \_\_\_\_\_ to improve their life.  
A. having had the chance  
B. had the chance  
C. to have the chance  
D. have the chance
92. The girl tried many times to sneak across the border to a neighboring country, \_\_\_\_\_ each time.  
A. having been caught  
B. always being caught

- C. had been caught  
D. only to be caught
93. I experienced having students \_\_\_\_\_ a thousand new words in a week.  
A. considering less talented to remember  
B. considered less talented remember  
C. considering less talented remember  
D. considered less talented to remember
94. The party \_\_\_\_\_ at my house, but the central heating broke down, and we had to have it at John's place.  
A. would be  
B. have been  
C. was to be  
D. was to have been
95. He couldn't help \_\_\_\_\_ after he heard the news.  
A. bursting into tears  
B. burst into tears  
C. bursting out tears  
D. burst out crying
96. For the government, the challenge \_\_\_\_\_ the reform to the end.  
A. is carry out  
B. is to carry out  
C. is for carrying out  
D. is to carrying out
97. They found the lecture hard \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to understand  
B. to be understood  
C. for understanding

- D. for being understood
98. The Cubists were concerned with how \_\_\_\_\_ a given subject from different points of view simultaneously.
- A. represented  
B. to represent  
C. do they represent  
D. represent
99. The parents scolded the child and made her promise \_\_\_\_\_ again.
- A. never to do that  
B. what to do never  
C. that never to do that  
D. so never to do that
100. I spoke to the kid kindly \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- A. not to frighten  
B. so as not to frighten  
C. in order to not frighten  
D. for not frightening
101. The child may be able to attain his immediate goal \_\_\_\_\_ that his method brings criticism from people who observe him.
- A. only to find  
B. only find  
C. only finding  
D. only have found
102. The student continued to do mischief in class even though his teacher repeatedly told him \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. not doing  
B. not

- C. not to  
D. to
103. The teacher doesn't allow \_\_\_\_\_ on the exam.  
A. his students to cheat  
B. his students' cheating  
C. to cheat  
D. his students cheat
104. The total influence of literature upon the course of human history \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. is difficult to evaluate  
B. is difficult to evaluate it  
C. difficult to evaluate it  
D. it is difficult to evaluate
105. Those naughty boys were caught \_\_\_\_\_ flowers in the garden again.  
A. to steal  
B. stealing  
C. to have stolen  
D. having stolen
106. Much of the forest, along with the farmland, near the Mount Saint Helens volcano, appears to \_\_\_\_\_ at the time of the eruption.  
A. be destroying  
B. have been destroying  
C. be destroyed  
D. have been destroyed
107. By the first decade of the 21st century, international commercial air traffic is expected \_\_\_\_\_ vastly beyond today's levels.

- A. to have extended  
B. to be extending  
C. to extend  
D. to be extended
108. A Dream of the Red Chamber is said \_\_\_\_\_ into dozens of languages in the last decade.  
A. to have been translated  
B. to translate  
C. to be translated  
D. to have translated
109. The local health organization is reported \_\_\_\_\_ twenty years ago when Dr. Smith became its first president.  
A. to be set up  
B. being set up  
C. to have been set up  
D. having been set up
110. In 1938 Pearl S. Buck became the first American woman \_\_\_\_\_ the Nobel Prize for Literature.  
A. receive  
B. received  
C. to receive  
D. she received
111. The first explorer \_\_\_\_\_ California by land was Strong Smith, a trapper who crossed the southwestern deserts of the United States in 1825.  
A. that he reached  
B. to reach  
C. reached  
D. reaching it



112. She could do nothing but \_\_\_\_\_ her name under the circumstances.
- A. to change
  - B. changing
  - C. change
  - D. to be changed
113. If he is not willing to be with you, why \_\_\_\_\_ somebody else?
- A. don't ask
  - B. not ask
  - C. to ask
  - D. not to ask
114. If you still don't have an answer from the University of New York, why \_\_\_\_\_ call the admission office?
- A. you don't
  - B. not to
  - C. not
  - D. don't
115. Since he is only a kid, why \_\_\_\_\_ fun of him?
- A. make
  - B. to make
  - C. making
  - D. not to make
116. —Do you believe that Charlie did best in the exam?  
—Yes. He is said \_\_\_\_\_ very hard.
- A. to work
  - B. that he worked
  - C. to have worked
  - D. that he has worked

117. I'd rather have a room of my own, however small it is, than \_\_\_\_\_ a room with someone else.
- A. to share
  - B. to have shared
  - C. share
  - D. sharing
118. Mrs. Brown is supposed \_\_\_\_\_ for Italy last week.
- A. to have left
  - B. to be leaving
  - C. to leave
  - D. to have been left
119. For nearly four hours they waited for the decision, only \_\_\_\_\_ to come again next day.
- A. they were told
  - B. to be told
  - C. to tell
  - D. being told
120. In order to \_\_\_\_\_ a passport, one must either present legal documents or call a witness to give evidence concerning one's identity.
- A. be issued
  - B. issue
  - C. have issue
  - D. have been issued
121. As luck would have it, my teacher happened to \_\_\_\_\_ America when an earthquake occurred in his native place.
- A. visit
  - B. have visited

- C. be visiting  
D. have been visiting
122. If we allow our imagination \_\_\_\_\_ by known research, our prophecies need not be sheer fantasy.  
A. guided  
B. be guided  
C. to be guided  
D. being guided
123. During the exam, the school authorities won't allow \_\_\_\_\_ freely.  
A. to talk  
B. talk  
C. talking  
D. to be talking
124. Since you changed lanes without signaling, you are as much \_\_\_\_\_ for the accident as us.  
A. to be blamed  
B. to blame  
C. blamed  
D. blaming
125. The specialized nature of anthropological research makes \_\_\_\_\_ that various groups of people be studied to determine their similarities and differences.  
A. imperative  
B. it imperative  
C. it is imperative  
D. it is an imperative

## 4.9 辨别改错

126. In order that save the California condor from extinction,  
A B  
a group of federal, local, and private organizations ini-  
C  
tiated a rescue program.  
D
127. Because of the recent accidents, our parents forbid me  
A  
from swimming in the river unless someone agrees  
B C  
to watch over us.  
D
128. Those part-time students expected to offer some jobs on  
A B  
campus during the coming summer vacation.  
C D
129. A conductor uses signals and gestures to let the musi-  
A  
cians to know when to play various parts of  
B C  
a composition.  
D
130. Ogden Nash often extended sentences over several  
A B  
lines produce surprising and comical rhymes.  
C D
131. For thousands of years, people have used some kind of  
A B  
refrigeration cooling beverages and preserve edibles.  
C D
132. The fragrant leaves of the laurel plant to sell commer-  
A B  
cially as bay leaves and are used for seasoning foods.  
C D

- 240

第四章 不定式综合练习参考答案

4.1-4.3

1-5: CAABC      6-10: DDCAB      11-15: ABBBB  
16-21: CCABCC

4.4

- 22. have murdered
- 23. have made
- 24. have visited
- 25. be waiting
- 26. have won
- 27. have been working
- 28. have recovered
- 29. have had
- 30. have been given
- 31. have been given a scholarship.
- 32. have worked

4.5

- 33. be sent
- 34. be sent
- 35. be fooled
- 36. be invited
- 37. be loved, needed
- 38. be told
- 39. read

- 40. let
- 41. seek
- 42. read
- 43. be constantly reminded
- 44. write
- 45. be used
- 46. understand

#### 4.6

- 47. to sing
- 48. work
- 49. die, surrender
- 50. love
- 51. change
- 52. play
- 53. escape
- 54. to go
- 55. not ask
- 56. make
- 57. fly, do, chat, speak

#### 4.7

- 58. 这孩子喜欢半闭着眼睛。
- 59. 她病得太重,实在无法上班。
- 60. 这个青年准备默默地陪伴她。
- 61. 这太重了,我甚至都搬不动。
- 62. 他决定再次向她求婚。
- 63. 我得小心地把花瓶从包里拿出来。
- 64. 希望这位战士能坚决完成任务。

4.8

65-70: AACBCA	71-75: BCCBA	76-80: BCCBC
81-85: ABBCC	86-90: ADDCB	91-95: DDBDA
96-100: BABAB	101-105: ACAAB	106-110: DAACC
111-115: BCBCA	116-120: CCABA	121-125: CCCBB

4.9

- 126. A/In order to
- 127. B/to swim
- 128. A/be offered
- 129. B/know
- 130. C/lines to produce
- 131. C/to cool
- 132. B/are sold
- 133. C/solve
- 134. C/that it
- 135. C/make possible
- 136. C/making possible
- 137. B/made possible



## 动名词

### 第一节 动名词充当的句子成分

#### 47. 动名词作主语

##### ► 1. 动名词放在句首作主语

与不定式作主语不同,动名词作主语一般直接放在句首,谓语动词用单数。

- a. *Seeing* is believing.
- b. *Reading* is like permitting a man to talk a long time, and refusing you the right to answer.
- c. *Hating people* is like burning down your own house to get rid of a rat. 憎恨别人,就好像为了赶走一只老鼠,而把自己的房子烧掉。
- d. *Having a successful marriage* takes effort and patience,

and communication is the key. 要获得成功的婚姻需要努力和耐心,而交流就是关键。

- e. *Ordering meals from an incomprehensible Chinese menu* is a daunting experience for foreigners, but sometimes the most expedient method is to scan nearby tables and point to dishes that they want to order. 在看不懂的中文菜谱上点菜对老外来说可是件头疼的事,不过有时最省事的就是看看邻座,然后用手指着自已想要的菜。
- f. *Going to the school dance* is a lot of fun. But sometimes, *deciding who to go with* isn't easy.
- g. *Getting into shape* doesn't mean you have to sweat and strain. You don't have to go for the burn to get into shape... just get going. *Walking, climbing stairs and bicycling* would count as long as the activity left the person slightly winded.
- h. \_\_\_\_\_ by transferring the blame to others is often called scapegoating. (TOEFL)  
 A. The eliminated problems  
 B. Eliminating problems  
 C. Eliminate problems  
 D. Problems are eliminated  
 正确答案:B。
- i. \_\_\_\_\_ to inanimate objects, such as machines, is a form of animism. (TOEFL)  
 A. When attributing emotion  
 B. Attributing emotion  
 C. Emotion is attributed  
 D. If emotion is attributed  
 正确答案:B。

## ► 2. 固定句型

英文中有几个动名词后置作主语的固定句型,现列举如下:

**句型一: It is no good/no use doing sth**

表示“干什么事没有用”。这里, it 只是形式主语,真正主语是 doing sth。其中, no good 可替换为: any/some good, any/some/no use, a waste of time 等。

- a. Is it any good trying to explain?
- b. It's no use crying over spilt milk. 后悔没有用。
- c. It's not much use my buying salmon if you don't like fish.
- d. It's simply a waste of time and money seeing that movie.
- e. It's no use \_\_\_\_\_ me not to worry. (8901CET-4)

- A. you tell
- B. your telling
- C. for you to have told
- D. having told

正确答案: B。

**句型二: There is no point/use/good (in) doing something**

表示“干某事没有必要,没有意义”,“干某事没有用”

- a. There is no point in my buying salmon if you don't like fish.
- b. There is no point in my going out to date someone, I might really like if I met him at the time, but who, right now, has no chance of being anything to me but a transitional man. 现在让我出去和别人拍拖没有用。如果我碰上了意中人,我自然会爱上他的。可是在现在这个时候,我跟谁也不会有结果的,除非是为了解解闷而已。

- c. There is no use your arguing with him. 你没必要和他争论。

### 句型三: There is no doing something

意思相当于 It's impossible to do something 或 We can't do something. 不可能做某事

- a. There is no denying the fact that... 毋庸置疑
- b. There is no gainsaying the fact that... 毋庸置疑
- c. There is no telling what will happen tomorrow. 谁也无法预知明天会发生什么。
- d. There's no knowing the future. = It's impossible to know the future, or we can't know the future. 谁也无法预知未来。

## 48. 动名词作宾语

### ► 1. 下列动词后只能用动名词作宾语:

admit, advise, anticipate, appreciate, avoid, consider, contemplate, delay, deny, detest, discuss, dislike, encourage, endure, enjoy, escape, excuse, fancy, favor, feel like, finish, forbid, forgive, give up, can't help, imagine, involve, leave off, mention, mind, miss, overlook, permit, postpone, practice, prohibit, put off, resent, resist, risk, can't stand, suggest, tolerate, understand 等。

- a. I will *overlook your being* so rude to my sister this time but don't let it happen again.
- b. Many of the things we do *involve taking* some risk in order to achieve a satisfactory result.

- c. Being a bad-tempered man, he would not *tolerate having* his lectures interrupted.
- d. Peter, who had been driving all day, suggested \_\_\_\_\_ at the next town. ( CET-4-2000-6)
- A. to stop
- B. stopping
- C. stop
- D. having stopped
- 正确答案:B。
- e. Putting in a new window will \_\_\_\_\_ cutting away part of the roof. ( 2000-6CET-4)
- A. include
- B. involve
- C. contain
- D. comprise
- 正确答案:B。
- f. They are considering \_\_\_\_\_ before the prices go up. (8901CET-4)
- A. of buying the house
- B. buying the house
- C. with buying the house
- D. to buy the house
- 正确答案:B。
- g. She was so angry that she felt like \_\_\_\_\_ something at him. (9206 CET-4)
- A. to throw
- B. throwing
- C. to have thrown
- D. having thrown

正确答案:B。

## ► 2. 特别关注的动词

上面接动名词的动词中有几个需特别注意:

allow, advise, forbid, permit, recommend

1) 这些动词后要接动名词作宾语,如:allow doing 等。

2) 但在有人作宾语时,则后接动词不定式(用作宾补),如:

allow somebody to do。请看例句:

a. We don't **allow smoking** in the lecture room.

b. We don't **allow people to smoke** in the lecture room.

c. I wouldn't **advise taking** the car, —there's nowhere to park. 我不主张开车去,因为没地方停车。

d. I wouldn't **advise you to take** the car. 我劝你不要开车去。

e. I **recommended going** by subway. 我建议坐地铁去。

f. The doctor **recommended me to take** a few days' rest. 医生劝我休息几天。

g. I advise you \_\_\_\_\_ before \_\_\_\_\_ final decision.

A. waiting/to make

B. to wait/make

C. waiting/making

D. to wait/making

正确答案:D。

## ► 3. 接动名词和接动词不定式有区别的动词

在英语中有很多动词后接动名词和接动词不定式均可,但在意思上往往有很大的差别,现将这样的动词分类归纳整理如下:

1) 在 demand, deserve, need, require, want 等动词后面,要

接动名词的主动形式而不是被动形式,但表示被动的意思;若改接动词不定式,则必须用动词不定式的被动形式。

- a. The garden needs *watering* / *to be watered*. 不说: The garden needs *being watered*.
  - b. Your hair needs *cutting* / *to be cut*.
  - c. He deserved *praising*. 不说: He deserved *being praised*.
  - d. Your hair wants \_\_\_\_\_. You'd better have it done tomorrow. ( 9706 CET-4)
- A. cut  
B. to cut  
C. cutting  
D. being cut

正确答案: C。

- 2) 与 remember, forget, stop, go on 和 regret 连用时,动名词指发生于这些动词之前的事,不定式表示发生在它们之后的事。

#### A. Remember

remember doing sth: *remember / recall something that happened in the past*. 记得已做过某事。

- a. I still remember being taken to Beijing for the first time.
- b. I don't remember/recall locking my suitcase. =  
As far as I know, my suitcase should be open.

Remember to do sth: *remember to perform a responsibility, duty or task* 记得需要履行职责或完成任务。

- a. Remember to go to the post office, won't you?
- b. Remember to do some shopping after work.
- c. Clint always remembers to turn off the lights when he leaves the room.

- d. If I had remembered \_\_\_\_\_ the window, the thief would not have got in. (96-1 CET-4)
- A. to close  
B. closing  
C. to have closed  
D. having closed

正确答案:A。

**B. Forget**

forget doing sth: *forget something that happened in the past*. 忘记了已做过的某事。

- a. I forgot locking the door. So when I came back, I found the door locked. As far as I know, the door should be open.

- b. I'll never forget visiting Beijing for the first time.

forget to do sth: *forget to perform a responsibility, duty or task* 忘记要做的事。

- a. As well as getting on everybody's nerves, he's got a habit of borrowing money and *forgetting to* pay it back.

- b. I forgot to mail the letter.

- c. I'll never forget \_\_\_\_\_ you for the first time.  
(2000 年 12 CET-4)

- A. to meet  
B. meeting  
C. to have met  
D. having to be meeting

正确答案:B。

**C. Stop**

stop doing: 停下经常做的或手头正在做的事。



I really must stop smoking.

stop to do: 中断下来,以便做另外的某事。

Stop *to have a rest*. (to have a rest 是目的状语,不是宾语。)

#### D. Go on

go on doing sth: 继续做一直在做的事。

a. The teacher went on explaining the text. (老师一直在讲课文。)

b. Peter went on sleeping despite the noise.

go on to do sth: 改做另一件事。

a. He welcomed the new students and then went on to explain the college regulations.

b. Finishing the new words, the teacher went on to attack the text.

#### E. Regret

regret doing sth: *regret something that happened in the past*. 对已发生的事感到遗憾。

a. I *don't regret telling* her what I thought, even if it upset her. 我并不后悔把自己的想法告诉她,尽管这让她很恼火。

注意否定位置不同而句义也不同,比较:

I regret *not telling* her what I thought. 我现在很后悔没有告诉她我真实的想法。

b. I regret letting slip that opportunity. 我真后悔错过了那次机会。

c. I regret lending him so much money. He never paid me back. 我真后悔把那么多钱借给他,他从来不还。

d. Now he regrets not having gone to university.

regret to do sth: *regret to say, to tell someone, or to inform someone of some bad news.* 遗憾地告诉或通知某人某个坏消息。

- a. We regret to inform you that we are unable to offer you employment.
  - b. I regret to tell you that you failed the test.
  - c. We regret to inform you that the flight has been cancelled.
  - d. We regret \_\_\_\_\_ you that you are to be dismissed next week. (CET-4)
- A. to have informed
  - B. informing
  - C. to inform
  - D. having informed

正确答案:C。

### 3) try/mean/chance + doing, or to do

#### A. try

try doing sth: 试试做某事,看看会发生什么情况。

- a. I tried sending her flowers, but it didn't have any effect.
- b. Try using this key to see if it works.
- c. The room was hot. I *tried opening* the window, but that didn't help. So I *tried turning* on the fan, but I was still hot. Finally, I turned on the air conditioner.

try to do sth: 作了一番努力,试图完成某事。

- a. I once tried to learn Japanese.
- b. I tried to open the window, but it got stuck. 我想把窗子打开,但它卡住了。

## B. mean

mean doing sth: 意味着…

- a. Your plan would mean spending hours.
- b. Love means *never having* to say you're sorry. 爱意味着永远别说抱歉。

mean to do sth: 打算做某事, 意思是想…

- a. I don't mean to be rude, but could you stop smoking?
- b. I didn't mean \_\_\_\_\_ anyone but somehow I succeeded in annoying them all. (CET-4)
  - A. having offended
  - B. to be offending
  - C. to offend
  - D. offending

正确答案: C。

## C. chance

chance doing sth: risk doing sth 冒险做某事。

- a. He chanced climbing the rock without any aid.

chance to do sth: happen to do sth, 碰巧做某事。

He chanced to find his lost bike in front of a store.

## ► 4. to doing

在英文中带有 to 的固定短语, 其后须接动名词:

look forward to, object to, be/get used to, prefer doing to doing, in addition to, be accustomed to do / doing, amount to doing (意味着…), take to doing (开始喜欢做…), devote... to doing/be devoted to doing, dedicate... to doing/be dedicated to doing, be averse to doing, be opposed to doing, get round to doing,

the way/approach/solution to doing, etc.

- a. I am looking forward to hearing from you. 我期待你的来信。
- b. I am used to sleeping with the lights on.
- c. I am accustomed to sleeping with the lights on 或 I am accustomed to sleep with the lights on.
- d. The students object to increasing their tuition.
- e. After a long delay I finally *got round to* making inquiries into the matter. 拖了很长时间以后,我才终于抽出时间来过问这件事。
- f. The children are opposed to \_\_\_\_\_ without their uncle. (CET-4)

- A. have a party
- B. have held a party
- C. take part in a party
- D. having a party

正确答案:D。

- g. I have no objection \_\_\_\_\_ the evening with them. (CET-4)
- A. to spend
- B. spending
- C. of spending
- D. to spending

正确答案:D。

- h. They don't object \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting until Friday. (CET-4)
- A. to our postponing
- B. that we postpone
- C. for postponing

D. to postpone

正确答案:A。

关于这样的短语,需要大家在平时的学习过程中注意不断地积累和总结。

### ► 5. 其他用动名词的结构:

- |    |      |   |                    |                |
|----|------|---|--------------------|----------------|
| 1) | have | { | difficulty         |                |
|    |      |   | trouble            |                |
|    |      |   | problem            |                |
|    |      |   | (a lot of) fun     | (in) doing sth |
|    |      |   | (lots of) pleasure |                |
|    |      |   | a hard time        |                |
|    |      |   | a good time        |                |
|    |      |   | a difficult time   |                |

但要注意:take the trouble **to do** sth, trouble **to do** sth, have (no) time **to do** sth

a. W: How do you find your new apartment?

M: Well, it's quite nice really, although I **have a hard time getting used to living** in a big place.

Q: What is the man's problem?

A: He finds the new apartment too big for him.

b. I have learned, however, that change always seems more difficult at the outset, and if I work hard at remaining positive and view changes as opportunities to grow, I **have an easier time dealing** with them.

c. I worked so late in the office last night that I hardly had time \_\_\_\_\_ the last bus. (99 考研题)

A. to have caught

- B. to catch
- C. catching
- D. having caught

正确答案:B。

- d. The teachers have had some problems \_\_\_\_\_ when they should return the final papers to the students.

- A. to decide
- B. deciding
- C. decided
- D. having decided

正确答案:B。

- 2) can't help doing, can't resist doing, can't keep from doing, can't hold back from doing, can't keep back from doing 这些短语均表示“情不自禁…,不得不…”

不过注意: can't help but do, can't but do, can't choose but do, etc.

No one can help liking Tom; he is such a cute boy.

- 3) be worth doing, “值得做…”。主动形式表示被动的意思。

be worthy *of being done* 或 *to be done*

- a. The book is worth *reading*.
- b. The book is worthy *of being read*.
- c. The book is worthy *to be read*.

此外还有 be busy doing, 但是注意 be busy with sth 这个结构。

remind sb of sth, 但是不说: remind sb of doing sth, 而是 remind sb to do sth,

- a. The money will be used to keep a space vehicle on the moon busy \_\_\_\_\_ back to the earth photographs and

other information about the surface of the moon.  
(9206CET-4)

- A. to send
- B. sending
- C. to be sent
- D. being sent

正确答案:B。

## 第二节 动名词的逻辑主语

### ——动名词的复合结构

#### 49. 动名词的复合结构

同不定式完全类似,动名词也是动词的一种变化形式,既然是动词就应该有动作的执行者,即主语。而句子主语和动名词的动作执行者并不总是统一的(有时是一样的,有时不一样),所以动名词的主语称之为逻辑主语,以区别于句子主语。

##### ► 1. 构成:my doing/Tom's doing

物主代词(如:his, my, your 等)或所有格名词(如:Mary's, Tom's 等)与动名词连用,即构成动名词的复合结构(his doing, Mary's doing),用来引出动名词的逻辑主语。当句子主语并不是动名词动作的执行者时,我们就需要给出动名词的逻辑主语。请比较:

普通动名词	动名词复合结构
Clint insisted on reading the letter. Clint 坚持要看信。(Clint 看了信)	Clint insisted on <i>my reading</i> the letter. Clint 坚持要我看信。(我看了信)
Would you mind telling us the whole story? 你是否愿意把事情经过告诉我们? (你告诉)	Would you mind <i>Tom's telling</i> us the whole story? = Would you mind if Tom tells us the whole story? 你是否愿意让 Tom 把事情经过告诉我们?(Tom 告诉)
He disliked working late. 他不喜欢工作到很晚。	He disliked <i>his wife's working</i> late. 他不喜欢他老婆工作到很晚。
I object to making private calls on this phone. 我不赞成用这部电话机打私人电话。	I object to <i>his making</i> private calls on this phone. 我不赞成他用这部电话机打私人电话。

## ► 2. 用法:

这种结构常在句中作主语或宾语。请看例句:

### 1) 用作主语:

*Tom's coming* home at last was a great consolation.

### 2) 用作动词宾语:

a. Do you mind *my making* a suggestion?

b. Would you mind *Tom's telling* us the whole story?

### 3) 作介词宾语

a. Our discussion of earthquakes would be incomplete if we didn't raise the possibility of *their being caused* by



external forces. 要是我们没有考虑到外部力量造成地震的可能性,那么我们对于地震的研究还有欠缺。

- b. Clint insisted on *my reading* the letter.
- c. What are the chances of *a sleepwalker's committing* a murder or doing something else extraordinary in his sleep? 梦游者在睡梦中实施谋杀或做出其他一些超常活动的可能性有多大呢?
- d. When I was a child, I would take a flashlight (手电筒) to bed with me so that I could read comic books without *my parents' knowing* about it.

### ► 3. 普通格还是所有格?

在应用动名词复合结构时,什么时候用普通格什么时候用所有格,一般遵循下面规定:

- 1) 若动名词复合结构在句中作主语,最好用所有格形式:
  - a. *Tom's refusing* to accept the invitation upset me.
  - b. *His refusing* to accept the invitation upset me. (不宜用 him refusing)
  - c. It was a great consolation *his coming* home at last. (不宜用 him coming)
- 2) 动名词复合结构在句中作宾语时,用普通格或所有格均可。
  - a. Do you mind *me making* a suggestion?
  - b. I am annoyed about *John forgetting* to pay.
  - c. I remember \_\_\_\_\_ to help us if we ever got into trouble. (9306CET-4)  
 A. once offering  
 B. him once offering

C. him to offer

D. to offer him

正确答案:B。

3) 若动名词的逻辑主语是无生命的“物”而不是“人”时,最好用普通格:

a. The noise of the *desks being opened and closed* can be heard out in the street.

b. There is a necessity for this type of *houses being built*.

c. In the event of *the project not being a success*, the investors stand to lose up to \$ 30 million. 万一这个项目投资失败,投资者将会损失三千万美元。

4) 若动名词的逻辑主语是不定代词时(如:someone, anyone, everyone 等),最好用普通格:

He was awakened by *someone knocking* on the door.

5) 若动名词的逻辑主语由较长的一组词构成时,最好用普通格:

a. There is no point *any one of us arguing* with him.

b. I've always had in my mind a dream of *my father, mother and I living* together.

c. Do you remember *John and his father coming* to see us last Christmas?

### 第三节 动名词时态与语态

#### 50. 动名词时态语态

##### ► 1. 动名词的被动式:

1) 构成: *being done*

2) 意义与用法: 当动名词所修饰的名词或代词在意义上是充当动名词动作的承受者时, 或者说是作动名词的逻辑宾语时, 动名词要用被动形式。

a. *He* narrowly escaped *being run* over. 他差一点就被车轧着了。

b. I have not the least objection to *the child being punished*. 对这孩子进行惩罚我丝毫不反对。

c. I still remember *being taken* to the zoo for the first time. 我还记得第一次被带到动物园的情景。

比较: I remember *my parents' taking me* to the zoo.

d. Mark often attempts to escape \_\_\_\_\_ whenever he breaks traffic regulations. (95-6 CET-4)

A. *having been fined*

B. *to be fined*

C. *to have been fined*

D. *being fined*

正确答案: D。

此外也要注意前面说过的, 在 *demand*, *deserve*, *need*, *require*, *want* 等动词后面, 动名词主动形式表示被动的意思, 而不

需用动名词的被动形式。若改接动词不定式,则必须用动词不定式的被动形式。

## ► 2. 动名词的完成式:

1) 构成: *having done*

2) 意义与用法: 用动名词完成式表明动名词动作发生在谓语动作之前。

a. He denied *having been* there.

b. I repented *having shot* the bird.

c. He regretted *not having gone* to university. 他很后悔当初没有上大学。

d. I have always regretted \_\_\_\_\_ harder at school.

A. to have not studied

B. not study

C. not having studied

D. not to study

正确答案: C。

e. The man in the corner confessed to \_\_\_\_\_ a lie to the manager of the company. ( 9706 CET-4)

A. have told

B. be told

C. being told

D. having told

正确答案: D。

## ► 3. 动名词的完成被动式:

1) 构成: *having been done*

2) 意义与用法: 兼具完成式和被动式的双重特点。

- a. I appreciate *having been given* the opportunity to study abroad two years ago.
- b. He prided himself on *having never been beaten* in chess.  
他为自己 在棋弈上从未被击败而自豪。
- c. Our modern civilization must not be thought of as \_\_\_\_\_ in a short period of time. (CET-4)  
A. being created  
B. to have been created  
C. having been created  
D. to be created

正确答案:C。

## 第四节 There be 的动名词及不定式形式

### 51. There be 的动名词及不定式形式

#### ► 1. There be 的动名词形式

There be 的动名词形式为: *there being*。多用于介词后面。

- a. Do not bet *on there being* many marriages in China that began with love at first sight. Most Chinese marry for practical—not romantic—reasons. That is the conclusion of a four-year study sponsored by the Ford Foundation of New York City.
- b. No one would have dreamed *of there being* such a good place.
- c. He spoke *of there being* danger.

d. No one had told Smith about \_\_\_\_\_ a lecture the following day. (2000 年 12 CET-4)

- A. there be
- B. there would be
- C. there was
- D. there being

正确答案:D。

e. Ann never dreams of \_\_\_\_\_ for her to be sent abroad very soon. (98.6 CET-4)

- A. there being a chance
- B. there be a chance
- C. there to be a chance
- D. being a chance

正确答案:A。

## ► 2. There be 的不定式形式

There be 的不定式形式为: there to be。用在接不定式作宾语的动词后面或用于介词 for 后面。

- a. *For there to be life*, there must be air and water. = In order that there may be life, there must be air and water.
- b. It was too late *for there to be any buses*.
- c. I don't *mean there to be* any unpleasantness. 我并没有任何冒犯之意。
- d. I don't *want there to be* any misunderstanding on this point.

## 第五章 动名词练习

### 5.1 单项选择(动名词作主语)

1. It's no good \_\_\_\_\_ money on make-up.  
A. of you to waste  
B. for you to waste  
C. to waste  
D. your wasting
2. It's no good \_\_\_\_\_ me. You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ someone else.  
A. to ask/to try  
B. to ask/try  
C. asking/tried  
D. asking/try
3. \_\_\_\_\_ what John will be doing next.  
A. No saying  
B. There's no to say  
C. There's no saying  
D. Not to say
4. There is \_\_\_\_\_ that this has been a difficult year for the company.  
A. not to deny  
B. not denying  
C. no denying  
D. without denying
5. It's a waste of time \_\_\_\_\_ with such a silly fellow.  
A. trying to reason

- B. tried to reason
  - C. for trying to reason
  - D. to trying reasoning
6. There was \_\_\_\_\_ telling how much work we had done by the time you came that morning.
- A. not
  - B. hardly
  - C. no
  - D. not any
7. It is \_\_\_\_\_ for him any longer; we might as well go without him.
- A. not use to wait
  - B. no use of waiting
  - C. no use waiting
  - D. no use to wait

## 5.2 单项选择(动名词作宾语)

- 8. I've had a hard time \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) English.
- 9. I still remember \_\_\_\_\_ (take) to Beijing for the first time.
- 10. Love means \_\_\_\_\_ (never, have) to say you're sorry.
- 11. Clint always remembers \_\_\_\_\_ (turn) off the lights when he leaves the room.
- 12. Now he regrets \_\_\_\_\_ (not, go) to university.
- 13. We regret \_\_\_\_\_ (inform) you that the flight has been cancelled.
- 14. I regret \_\_\_\_\_ (let) slip that opportunity.
- 15. The teacher has had some problems \_\_\_\_\_ (decide) when they should return the final papers to the stu-



dents.

16. Mr. Smith regretted \_\_\_\_\_ (blame) his secretary for the mistake, for he later discovered it was his own fault.
17. Peter went on \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep) despite the noise.
18. He welcomed the new students and then went on \_\_\_\_\_ (explain) the college regulations.
19. The boy is constantly being told not to scratch the paint off the wall, but he goes on \_\_\_\_\_ (do) it all the same.
20. After the listening test, the students then went on \_\_\_\_\_ (translate) some sentences.

### 5.3 单项选择(动名词逻辑主语)

21. \_\_\_\_\_ in an atmosphere of simple living was what her parents wished for.
  - A. The girl was educated
  - B. The girl educated
  - C. The girl's being educated
  - D. The girl to be educated
22. I still remember \_\_\_\_\_ me to Beijing for the first time.
  - A. for my parents to take
  - B. my parents' taking
  - C. that my parents take
  - D. my parents to take
23. I don't see how you can avoid the matter \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. discussed
  - B. to be discussed
  - C. being discussed
  - D. been discussed
24. Last night I was awakened by someone \_\_\_\_\_ at the

door.

- A. tap
- B. tapping
- C. tapped
- D. to tap

25. The noise of the desks \_\_\_\_\_ could be heard out in the street.
- A. opening and closing
  - B. of being opened and closed
  - C. to be opened and closed
  - D. being opened and closed
26. You must tell me the truth. I insist on \_\_\_\_\_ the truth.
- A. telling
  - B. having told
  - C. your telling
  - D. that you tell

#### 5.4 用动词适当形式填空(动名词时态语态)

27. The text needs \_\_\_\_\_ (explain) once again.
28. The movie is worthy of \_\_\_\_\_ (see).
29. You must tell me the truth. I insist on \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) the truth.
30. I strongly object to \_\_\_\_\_ (treat) like a child.
31. Clint had a narrow escape. He was almost hit by a car. He barely avoided \_\_\_\_\_ (hit) by the speeding automobile.
32. Last year I studied abroad. I appreciate \_\_\_\_\_ (give) the opportunity to live and study in a foreign country.
33. I'm angry at him for \_\_\_\_\_ (not, tell) me the truth.

34. I don't enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ (laugh) at by other people.
35. A: You know Clint, don't you?  
B: Clint? I don't think so. I don't recall ever \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) him.
36. A: What's the difference between "stop to do" and "stop doing"?  
B: Hmmm, that's an interesting question. I don't recall \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) that question before.

### 5.5 单项选择 (there be 的动名词和不定式)

37. It is impossible \_\_\_\_\_ a happier family.  
A. of there to be  
B. there is  
C. for there to be  
D. there will be
38. John was relying on there \_\_\_\_\_ another opportunity.  
A. was  
B. being  
C. had been  
D. would
39. People expect there \_\_\_\_\_ more discussions on this topic.  
A. are to  
B. is to  
C. to be  
D. being
40. It isn't cold enough for there \_\_\_\_\_ a frost tonight, so I can leave Jim's car out quite safely.  
A. would be

- B. being  
C. was  
D. to be
41. She was wrong about there \_\_\_\_\_ some misunderstanding between us.  
A. be  
B. been  
C. being  
D. has
42. The students expected there \_\_\_\_\_ more reviewing classes before the final exams.  
A. is  
B. being  
C. have been  
D. to be

### 5.6 单项选择(综合练习)

43. People appreciate \_\_\_\_\_ with him because he has a good sense of humor.  
A. to work  
B. to have worked  
C. working  
D. having worked
44. Although a teenager, Fred could resist \_\_\_\_\_ what to do and what not to do.  
A. to be told  
B. having been told  
C. being told  
D. to have been told

45. "Is George really leaving the university?" "Yes, but would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ to anyone?"  
 A. not mentioning  
 B. not mention it  
 C. not to mention it  
 D. not mentioning it
46. I can't understand \_\_\_\_\_ a decision until it is too late.  
 A. him to postpone to make  
 B. his postpone making  
 C. his postponing to make  
 D. his postponing making
47. We were greatly encouraged by the news of China \_\_\_\_\_ another man-made satellite.  
 A. to have launched  
 B. to launch  
 C. launched  
 D. having launched
48. At six o'clock in the evening, when a cat ran through a truck it narrowly escaped \_\_\_\_\_ over.  
 A. running  
 B. to be run  
 C. from running  
 D. being run
49. Building that railway was very difficult and involved \_\_\_\_\_ ten tunnels.  
 A. dig  
 B. digging  
 C. to have dug  
 D. having dug

50. I strongly object \_\_\_\_\_ like a child.  
A. to be treated  
B. to being treated  
C. of being treated  
D. of treating
51. That young man still denies \_\_\_\_\_ the fire behind the store.  
A. to start  
B. having started  
C. start  
D. to have started
52. The school authority doesn't permit \_\_\_\_\_ on campus.  
A. demonstrate  
B. to demonstrate  
C. to hold a demonstration  
D. demonstrating
53. There's a man at the reception desk who seems very angry and I think he means \_\_\_\_\_ trouble.  
A. making  
B. to make  
C. to have made  
D. having made
54. Do you remember \_\_\_\_\_ to Professor Smith during your last visit?  
A. to be introduced  
B. having introduced  
C. being introduced  
D. to have introduced
55. I'm sure your proposal will \_\_\_\_\_ the problem.

- A. contribute to solving
  - B. be contribute to solve
  - C. contribute to solve
  - D. be contributed to solving
56. Ann prefers \_\_\_\_\_ taking an examination.
- A. writing a term paper than
  - B. writing a term paper to
  - C. to write a term paper and
  - D. to write a term paper than
57. The teacher said that he wouldn't tolerate \_\_\_\_\_ late every day.
- A. for me to arrive
  - B. me arrived
  - C. me to arrive
  - D. my arriving
58. Many of the things we do involve \_\_\_\_\_ some risk in order to achieve a satisfactory result.
- A. taking
  - B. take care
  - C. to take
  - D. being taking
59. I don't think you will have any difficulty \_\_\_\_\_ a driving license.
- A. for getting
  - B. to get
  - C. having got
  - D. getting
60. The thief caught on the spot by the policeman denied \_\_\_\_\_ anything.

- A. to do  
B. to have done  
C. do  
D. doing
61. I will overlook \_\_\_\_\_ so rude to my sister this time but don't let it happen again.  
A. you to be  
B. your being  
C. you to have been  
D. you having been
62. Although punctual himself, the professor was quite used \_\_\_\_\_ late for his lecture.  
A. to have students  
B. for students' being  
C. for students to be  
D. to students' being
63. Technology will play a key role in \_\_\_\_\_ future lifestyles.  
A. to shape  
B. shaping  
C. shape of  
D. shaped
64. In some countries people favor \_\_\_\_\_ together even though there is much more space.  
A. to stay  
B. stay  
C. staying  
D. of staying
65. \_\_\_\_\_ can help but be fascinated by the world into which



- he is taken by the science fiction.
- A. Everybody
  - B. Anybody
  - C. Somebody
  - D. Nobody
66. When Jane fell off the bike, the other children \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. were not able to help laughter  
 B. could not help but laughing  
 C. could not help laughing  
 D. could not help to laugh
67. Ted has told me that he always escapes \_\_\_\_\_ as he has got a very fast sports car.  
 A. to fine  
 B. to be fined  
 C. being fined  
 D. having been fined
68. Shortly after his retirement, the former president \_\_\_\_\_ gardening and hunting.  
 A. took to  
 B. took on  
 C. took in  
 D. took after
69. Since British Railways introduced its new inter-city expresses, many businessmen have taken \_\_\_\_\_ by train.  
 A. in traveling  
 B. to travel  
 C. to traveling  
 D. on travel
70. Perfectly matched pearls, strung into a necklace, \_\_\_\_\_

a far higher price than the same pearls sold individually.

- A. in order to bring
- B. bringing
- C. their bringing
- D. bring

71. The traditional approach \_\_\_\_\_ with complex problems is to break them down into smaller, more easily managed problems.

- A. to dealing
- B. in dealing
- C. dealing
- D. to deal

72. The supervisor said the school board was considering not \_\_\_\_\_ the students' proposal for the strict administration.

- A. to accept
- B. accept
- C. accepted
- D. accepting

73. Nearly every country in the world either claims to be democratic or to be on the way \_\_\_\_\_ democratic.

- A. to becoming
- B. to become
- C. of becoming
- D. in becoming

74. The government is believed to be considering \_\_\_\_\_ a law making it crime to import any weapon.

- A. to pass
- B. to have passed

- C. passing  
D. having passed
75. The items exhibited are well worth \_\_\_\_\_, and attracted large crowds of visitors in the past few days.  
A. seeing  
B. to be seen  
C. seen  
D. to see
76. For there \_\_\_\_\_ successful communication, there must be attentiveness and involvement in the discussion itself by all present.  
A. is  
B. to be  
C. will be  
D. being
77. First designated in 1970, Earth Day has become an annual international event \_\_\_\_\_ concerns about environmental issues such as pollution.  
A. dedicated to raising  
B. dedicates to raising  
C. dedicated to raise  
D. dedicates to raise
78. Nowhere in nature is aluminum found free, owing to its always \_\_\_\_\_ with other elements, most commonly with oxygen.  
A. combined  
B. having combined  
C. combine  
D. being combined

- ## 5.7 辨别改错

- 279

- not help but believing that the public will appreciate his  
C D  
gift.
85. Alice was having trouble to control the children because  
A B  
there were so many of them.  
C D
86. Some bosses dislike to allow people to share their respon-  
A B  
sibilities; they keep all important matters tightly in their  
C D  
own hands.
87. Neither rain nor snow keeps the postman from delivering  
A  
our letters which we so much look forward to receive.  
B C D
88. Elected to serve in the United States of Representatives  
A  
in 1968, Shirley Chisholm was known for advocacy the  
B C  
interests of the urban poor.  
D
89. The Moon's gravitational field cannot keep atmospheric  
A B  
gases from escape into space.  
C D
90. Using carbon-dating techniques, archaeologists can de-  
A  
termine the age of many ancient objects by measurement  
B C  
the amount of radioactive carbon they contain.  
D

第五章 动名词练习参考答案

5.1

1-5: DDCCA 6-7: CC

5.2

8. learning
9. being taken
10. never having
11. to turn
12. not having gone/not going
13. to inform
14. letting
15. deciding
16. blaming/having blamed
17. sleeping
18. to explain
19. doing
20. to translate

5.3

21-25: CBCBD 26: C

5.4

27. explaining/to be explained
28. being seen
29. being told/your telling

- 30. being treated
- 31. being hit
- 32. having been given
- 33. not having told
- 34. being laughed
- 35. meeting/having met
- 36. having been asked

#### 5.5-5.6

- 37-40: CBCD    41-45: CDCCD    46-50: DDDBB  
51-55: BDBCA    56-60: BDADD    61-65: BDBCD  
66-70: CCACD    71-75: ADACB    76-80: BADAD    81: A

#### 5.7

- 82. A/blaming
- 83. C/doing
- 84. C/but believe
- 85. B/controlling
- 86. A/allowing
- 87. D/to receiving
- 88. C/advocating
- 89. C/from escaping
- 90. C/measuring

## 分 词

---

### 第一节 现在分词与过去分词的意义

#### ——分词作定语

分词是英文中较难的一个造句规则,但是非常重要。分词的作用相当于形容词和副词,因此在句中主要是充当定语和状语,并且是简化定语从句和状语从句的一个重要手段。(关于从句简化详见“第七章 从句的简化”)

我们这里通过分词作定语的例子来比较两种分词的区别,但作状语时二者区别完全类似。分词是简化定语从句的一个重要手段,所以作定语的分词或分词短语都可以换成一个定语从句。下面我们着重分析现在分词与过去分词在思维上的差异。



## 52. 现在分词的意义

### ► 1. 主动的、一般的动作。

#### 特点：

- 1) 此时若将分词改成定语从句,则定语从句谓语要用一般时态。
- 2) 此时现在分词多数表示的是所修饰名词的一种持久性的特点,并不是强调正在发生的动作。
  - a. Unidentified Flying Objects (UFO): unidentified objects that *fly* 不明飞行物。
  - b. flying fishes: fishes that can *fly* 飞鱼
  - c. a promising young man: a young man who *promises* well 有出息、有前途的年轻人
  - d. the exploiting class: the class that *exploits* others. 剥削阶级
  - e. an understanding man: a man who *can understand* others' feelings 善解人意的人。
  - f. a puzzling problem: a problem that *puzzles* people. 令人迷惑的问题。
  - g. They live in a room facing the south. = They live in a room that *faces* the south. 他们住在一间朝南的屋子里。

### ► 2. 主动的、正在进行的动作。

#### 特点：

- 1) 此时若将分词改成定语从句,则定语从句谓语要用进行时态。

- 2) 此时现在分词多数表示的是所修饰名词的一种短暂性的特点,是强调正在发生的一个动作。
- a. falling leaves: leaves that are falling 正在飘落的叶子
  - b. The man standing at the gate is my English teacher. =  
The man who *is standing* at the gate is my English teacher.
  - c. I like the girl dancing with that guy. = I like the girl who *is dancing* with that guy.
  - d. the setting/rising sun: the sun that *is setting/rising*
  - e. the barking dog: the dog that *is barking*
  - f. a sleeping child: a child who *is sleeping*

### 53. 过去分词的意义

#### ► 1. 被动的、一般的或完成的动作。

##### 特点:

- 1) 此时若将分词改成定语从句,则定语从句谓语要用被动语态。
- a. the exploited class: the class that *is exploited*
  - b. the oppressed nations: the nations that *are oppressed*
  - c. a respected writer: a writer who *is respected*
  - d. the broken cup: the cup that *has been broken* before
  - e. an annoyed man: a man that *has been annoyed*
  - f. trained employees: employees who *have been trained* before
  - g. boiled water: water that *has been boiled*

## ► 2. 主动的、完成的动作。

### 特点:

- 1) 由及物动词变来的过去分词才有被动意义,而由不及物动词变来的过去分词则不表示被动,而只表示主动的、完成的动作。此时,过去分词一般表示一种完成的状态,而多数已失去了原动词的动作概念。
- 2) 此时若将分词改成定语从句,则定语从句谓语要用主动语态、完成时态。
  - a. fallen leaves: leaves that *have fallen* 地上的落叶
  - b. a retired general: a general who *has retired* 退伍的将军
  - c. faded colors: colors that *have faded* 褪了的颜色
  - d. departed friends: friends that *have departed* 久别的朋友
  - e. a developed country: a country that *has developed* 发达国家
  - f. returned students: students that *have returned from abroad* 归国留学生们
  - g. a married man: a man that *has married*. 已婚男子

此外还有如: vanished civilization(失落的文明), the risen sun(升起的太阳), rotten teeth(坏了的牙齿), shrunken clothes(缩水的衣服), sunken ships(沉没的船只), escaped prisoners(逃犯)等等。

综上所述,现在分词和过去分词二者的区别是:

1. 从语态角度来看,现在分词表示主动意义,它与所修饰的名词构成主谓关系,如: The man standing at the gate is my English teacher. 换句话说: The man who is standing at the gate is my English teacher.

而过去分词通常表示被动意义(不及物动词的过去分词除

外),与它所修饰的名词构成动宾关系,如:the broken cup、意思是:Someone broke the cup. 或 The cup was broken。

2. 从时态角度来看,现在分词一般表示进行动作。过去分词则表示完成的动作。

fallen leaves 地上的落叶	leaves that <i>have fallen</i> 表示完成的动作
falling leaves 正在飘落的叶子	leaves that <i>are falling</i> 表示进行的动作
sunken ships 沉没的船只	ships that <i>have sunken</i> 表示完成的动作
sinking ships 正在下沉的船只	ships that <i>are sinking</i> 表示进行的动作

#### 54. 三种表示被动的结构(考试重点)

- { to be done 表示将来的动作(用不定式被动)
- { being done 表示进行的动作
- { done 表示一般过去或完成的动作

说明:这三种被动形式主要用来作后置定语,所以我们在定语这一节讨论。但也可作状语或补足语。

- a. The question *being discussed* is very important.
- b. The house *being built* will be our library upon its completion.
- c. Are you going to attend the meeting *to be held next month*?
- d. Did you attend the meeting *held last month* in Shanghai?
- e. For any adhesive to make a really strong bond, the surfaces *to be glued* must be absolutely clean and free from moisture or grease. (对于任何粘合剂,要想粘得牢固的话,则被粘的表面必须绝对清洁且不能潮湿和有油性物

质。)

f. More than 300 local college students attended the torch-relay to show their support for the 21<sup>st</sup> Universiade, *to be held* in Beijing between August 22 and September 1. (China Daily, August 7)

g. A stranger shoved a gun \_\_\_\_\_ in a paper against his back and muttered: "I'm going in with you. This is a stickup! (抢劫)"

- A. concealed
- B. being concealed
- C. to be concealed
- D. concealing

正确答案:A。

h. A tiger can't be tamed unless \_\_\_\_\_ very young.

- A. being caught
- B. caught
- C. it being caught
- D. it's being caught

正确答案:B。

i. The project \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of 2010, will expand the city's telephone network to cover 1,000,000 users. (99-6 CET-6)

- A. accomplished
- B. being accomplished
- C. to be accomplished
- D. having been accomplished

正确答案:C。

j. If I correct someone, I will do it with as much good humor and self-restraint as if I were the one \_\_\_\_\_.

(95.1CET-4)

- A. to correct
- B. correcting
- C. having corrected
- D. being corrected

正确答案:D。

## 第二节 分词作状语

一说起分词做状语,一个重要问题首先必须引起我们的重视,即当分词做状语时,分词短语的逻辑主语和句子主语的关系问题。下面具体分析:

### 55. 关于分词短语作状语时的逻辑主语问题

如同前文讨论的不定式和动名词类似,分词也有逻辑主语的问题。关于分词的逻辑主语主要涉及三方面不同情况:

#### ► 1. 主语一致:分词短语的动作应该由句子主语发出

一般来讲,分词短语的动作应该是由句子主语发出的,也就是说,分词短语的逻辑主语必须与句子主语是一致的,否则句子意思在逻辑上就讲不通。先看下面典型的错误句子。

- a. *Looking* out of the window, there are lots *of people* in the street.
- b. *Waiting* for a bus, *a brick* fell on my head.
- c. After *doing* my homework, the dog was fed.
- d. When *using* the computer, *the password* must be remem-

bered.

e. *Arriving* home, *the door* was found locked.

f. *Being* a pop fan, *Celine Dion* is her favorite.

上面的句子均因为分词的动作与句子主语不搭配而造成错误。我们可以将它们作一下调整：

a. *Looking* out of the window, *I* saw lots of people on the street.

这里的 looking 动作是由 I 发出的, 即 I 是 looking 的逻辑主语, 原分词短语相当于 When I looked out of the window, ...

b. As I was waiting for a bus, a brick fell on my head. 或  
*Waiting* for a bus, *I* saw a brick falling out of a window/  
*I* came across a long lost friend.

c. After I did my homework, the dog was fed. 或最好改为:  
After *doing* my homework, *I* fed the dog.

d. When *using* the computer, *you* must remember the password.

e. *Arriving* home, *I* found the door locked.

f. *Being* a pop fan, *she* likes Celine Dion most.

g. After seeing the movie, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the book was read by him
- B. the book mad him want to read it
- C. the reading of the book interested him
- D. he wanted to read the book

正确答案: D。

h. Returning to my apartment, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. my watch was missing
- B. I found my watch disappeared
- C. I found my watch missing

D. The watch was missed

正确答案:C。

- i. \_\_\_\_\_ in this way, the situation doesn't seem so disappointing. ( CET-4 2000.01)

A. To look at

B. Looking at

C. Looked at

D. To be looked at

正确答案:C。

## ► 2. 有自己主语的分词结构——独立分词结构

- 1) 分词短语的逻辑主语除了上面讲到的要与句子主语一致外,很多情况下,分词本身有自己的意义上的主语,这时分词短语的动作和谓语动作就不是由同一主语发出。这种“名词或代词+分词短语”的结构,在英语中被称为“独立分词结构”。这就类似于动名词的复合结构(my doing)和不定式的复合结构(for sb to do)。

- a. *It* being so nice a day, we go out for a walk,
- b. *Weather* permitting, we'll be going fishing tomorrow.
- c. *All the money* having been spent, we started looking for work. 钱全花光后,我们就开始找工作。
- d. *Nobody having* any more to say, the meeting was closed. 谁都无话可说了,会议就结束了。
- e. The Chinese word for crisis is divided into two characters, *one meaning danger and the other meaning opportunity*. 中文中的“危机”分为两个字,一个意味着危险,另一个意味着机会。
- f. So many directors \_\_\_\_\_, the board meeting had to be put



off. (2000 年 12 CET-4)

- A. were absent
- B. being absent
- C. been absent
- D. had been absent

正确答案: B。

g. Some snakes lay eggs, others \_\_\_\_\_ birth to live offspring. (TOEFL)

- A. give
- B. giving
- C. they give
- D. to have given

正确答案: B。

h. Silver is the best conductor of electricity, copper \_\_\_\_\_ it closely. (CET-4)

- A. followed
- B. to follow
- C. following
- D. being followed

正确答案: C。

### ► 3. 固定表达方式

在一些表示说话人态度的固定表达方式中,分词短语主语和句子主语是不一致的。因为这已是约定俗成的,所以不认为错。我们在应用时,只需记住这些特殊的表达方式即可。这种结构常见的有:

- 1) 副词 + speaking : 如 generally (strictly, broadly, ...)  
speaking

- a. *Generally speaking*, men are stronger than women. (= If we are to speak generally, men ...)
- b. *Strictly speaking*, this is not a right answer.
- 2) 分词 + 介词: 如 *judging from*, *talking of*, *allowing for* (考虑到...), *considering*, *assuming*, *supposing*, etc.
  - a. *Judging from* his expression, *he* is in a lousy mood.
  - b. *Allowing for* her inexperience, *she* has done a good job.
  - c. *Talking of* English, she is the best speaker.
  - d. *Taking everything into consideration*, *they* ought to win this game.
- 3) 分词 + (that) 从句: 如 *seeing that...* (= *since...* 既然), *considering that...* (= *since...* 既然), *supposing that...* (= *if...* 假如), *granting that...* (= *though...* 尽管), *allowing that...* (考虑到)
  - a. *Considering* that she has no experience, she has done a good job.
  - b. *Considering* how far from perfect most human brains are, there isn't much threat from a computer.
  - c. *Supposing* there was a war, what would you do?
  - d. *Granting that* he has made a mistake, he is not to blame, for he intended to help us.

## 56. 分词短语作状语在句中的不同意义

分词短语作状语, 其实就是相应的状语从句简化的结果(见第七章), 在句中可表示时间、原因、条件、让步、结果、伴随等等。

## ► 1. 表时间,分词短语一般要置于句首。

1) 绝大多数情形,分词动作发生在谓语动作之前。

- a. *Having watered* the garden, he *began* to mow the lawn.  
= After he had watered the garden, he began to mow the lawn.
- b. *Having noted* down our names and addresses, the policeman *dismissed* us.
- c. *Reading* the letter, she *burst* out crying. = As she read the letter, she burst out crying.
- d. *Locking* the door, he *went* home.
- e. *Hearing* the joke, we *burst* out laughing.

2) 分词动作与谓语动作同时发生。

- f. Riding in the street during the rush hours, you must be careful. = When you are riding in the street during the rush hours, you must be careful.

若强调两个动作同时发生,多在分词结构前加 *when* 或 *while*,例如:

Be careful *when crossing* the street.

## ► 2. 表示原因,分词短语可置于句首或句末,有时还置于主谓之间。

- a. *It being* so nice a day, let's go out for a walk. = Since it is so nice a day, let's go out for a walk.
- b. *Not knowing* what to do next, I want to ask for your advice. = Because I don't know what to do next, I want to ask for your advice.
- c. Clint, *horrified* at what he had done, could at first say nothing. Clint 被自己所做的事吓坏了,一开始都说不出

话来。

► 3. 表条件,通常放在句首。

- a. *Given* more time, I would be able to complete it. = If I were given more time, I would be able to complete it.
- b. *Weather permitting*, we'll go fishing. = If weather permits, we'll go fishing.
- c. *United*, we stand; *divided*, we fail. = If we are united, we stand; if we are divided, we fail.
- d. *If seen* under a microscope, a fresh snowflake has a delicate six-pointed shape. 假如从显微镜下观察,新降的雪花有纤小的六瓣。
- e. *Added* to steel, chromium (铬) increases the metal's hardness.

► 4. 表让步,通常放在句首。

- a. *Having lived* in Canada for three years, he still can't speak English well. (= Though he has lived in Canada for three years, he...)
- b. *Mocked* at by everybody, he had my sympathy. (= Though he was mocked at by everybody, he...)
- c. *Though understanding* no Japanese, Charles was able to communicate with them.
- d. *Although usually living* on or under rocks or on coral reefs, marine snails have been observed in a great variety of habitats. (1999-8-31)
- e. *Although still running* in a number of cities, the electric trolley has for the most part fallen into disuse.

► 5. 表结果,一般只放在句末。否则句子意义会不同。

- a. Finding the door locked, I went home. 发现门锁着,我就回家了。(Finding 表示时间)
- b. I went home, finding the door locked. 我回到家里,发现门锁着。(Finding 表示结果)
- c. His wife died three years ago, *leaving* him with five children.
- d. It rained for two weeks on end, completely *ruining* our holiday.
- e. He fired, *killing* one of the bandits. 他开了枪,击毙了其中一名匪徒。
- f. The film "The Gua Sha Treatment" exposes profound cultural conflicts between the East and West, *arousing concerns in Chinese audiences*. 影片《刮痧》深刻揭示了东西方文化的差异,引起中国观众的强烈反响。

► 6. 表伴随状况、补充说明或方式,分词短语置于句首或句末均可。

- a. *Smiling*, he answered. 他笑着回答道。
- b. A traveler once visited a city where everyone wore blue. *Puzzled*, he went to a dyer and said, "Please dye this handkerchief red."
- c. He came *running* breathless and told me the results.
- d. She came *running* hurriedly into her husband's office one morning. 一天早上,她匆忙跑进她丈夫的办公室。
- e. We sat *talking about* college life on the grass.
- f. The old man enjoyed sitting in the sun *listening* to radio.

- g. The truck passed by, with a wake of dust *floating* toward me.
- h. The Chinese word for crisis is divided into two characters, *one meaning danger and the other meaning opportunity*.  
中文中的“危机”分为两个字,一个意味着危险,另一个意味着机会。
- i. When asked, “Do you consider yourself an optimistic or pessimistic person?”, 53 per cent of the students replied, “optimistic,” *with 21 per cent choosing* “pessimistic,” and 26 per cent “unsure”.
- j. In Italian legends, mermaids come ashore, marry men, and bear them children. But in time these mermaid wives desert their husbands and take their children away to the depth of the ocean. The Chinese say the mermaids pass their time *weaving*. When they weep, their tears turn into pearls.
- k. With more than 3 million hardcover copies *sold* in its first two years of publication, “Who Moved My Cheese?” has become an amazing best-seller, *topping* the New York Times, Wall Street Journal, Business Week and USA Today lists.

## 57. 带有连词或介词的分词短语

分词短语可以用在一定的连词或介词后面。

### ► 1. 连词 + 分词短语

用在连词后边的分词短语作状语,相当于简化后的状语从句

保留了连词。例如：

- a. **Once** deprived of oxygen, the brain dies. = Once it is deprived... 一旦缺氧, 大脑就会死亡。(once 强调时间)
- b. Be careful **while** crossing the road. (while 强调时间)
- c. **After talking** to you, I always feel much better.
- d. **Although** exhausted by the walk, he continued his journey. (although 强调让步)
- e. **Although usually living** on or under rocks or on coral reefs, marine snails have been observed in a great variety of habitats. (1999-8-31)
- f. **Although still running** in a number of cities, the electric trolley has for the most part fallen into disuse.
- g. **After** having annoyed everybody, he went home. 他把所有的人都惹烦了之后就回家了。
- h. **If seen** under a microscope, a fresh snowflake has a delicate six-pointed shape. 假如从显微镜下观察, 新降的雪花有纤小的六瓣。

但表示原因的分词短语前不能加连词(如 because, for, since, as), 往往加介词 with.

- i. \_\_\_\_\_ the temperature falling so rapidly, we couldn't go on with the experiment. (2000 年 12 CET-4)
- A. With
- B. For
- C. As
- D. Since

正确答案:A。

## ► 2. 介词+分词短语

分词短语表示伴随状况或原因的时候,可加介词 with 或 without。

- a. A car roared past, *with* smoke *pouring* from the exhaust.  
一辆小汽车呼啸而过,排气管冒出一团团黑烟。
- b. The old man often takes a walk after supper with his dog following him.
- c. She left the party, without a word said.

分词短语表示时间,可以在分词前边加 on。

- d. *On* hearing her son's death, the bereaved mother broke out crying. (on 强调时间,相当于 as soon as)一听到她儿子死亡的消息,这位母亲放声痛哭起来。

## 第三节 分词的完成式

## 58. 分词的完成式

- 1) 构成:表示主动:having done;表示被动:having been done
- 2) 意义与用法:分词的完成式主要是为了强调分词动作与谓语动作之间有很长的时间间隔,或者是因为分词动作本身经历了很长时间的延续。

**注意:**分词完成式一般不用作定语,而只作状语。



► 1. 分词动作与谓语动作之间有一段间隔,则必须用分词完成式。例如:

- a. *Having failed* twice, he didn't want to try again. 已经失败了两次,他不想再试了。
- b. *Having been* there many times, he offered to be our guide.
- c. *Having failed* to qualify as a doctor, I took up teaching.
- d. *Having been warned* about the thieves, he left his valuables at the bank.
- e. *Having been bitten* twice, the postman refused to deliver our letters unless we chained our dog up. 邮递员被狗咬了两次之后要我们把狗拴起来,不然就不给我们送信了。

如果分词动作与谓语动作之间时间间隔很短,这时即使分词动作先发生,我们也最好用分词一般式,以强调两个动作的衔接。例如:

- f. *Locking* the door, he *went* home. (门锁上之后,马上就回家了。)
- g. *Finding* the door locked, I went home. (发现门锁着,我就回家了。)
- h. *Hearing* the joke, we *burst* out laughing. (显然 hear 和 burst 两个动作时间间隔很短)

► 2. 分词动作本身要持续一段时间时,也必须用分词的完成式。例如:

- a. *Having watered* the garden, he began to mow the lawn. = After he had watered the garden, he began to mow the lawn. (having watered 强调动作经历了较长的一段时间)
- b. *Having been* his own boss for such a long time, he found it

hard to accept orders from another. 自己当老板已经这么久了,他觉得难以听从别人的差遣。

- c. For “good”, the Chinese worked out a combination of “woman” and “child”. Once this combination process had started, there was no limit to it. The Chinese still use the system today, *having developed* it to the point of producing some forty thousand combined characters out of a few hundred original pictures of concrete objects.

► 3. 使用分词的完成式可以避免造成句子意思混淆不清。例如:

- a. *Having sung* a song, he sat down. 唱完一支歌后,他就坐了下来。若说成: *Singing* a song, he sat down. 则意思可能是“唱着歌的时候,他就坐了下来”,给人感觉是“他坐着唱歌”。
- b. *Having eaten* his supper, he went out. 吃完晚饭后,他出门了。若说成: *Eating* his supper, he went out \* 则给人感觉是“他端着饭碗出门的”。

但是,在不造成歧义的情况下,我们一般不必使用分词的完成式。比如:

- c. *Putting down* my newspaper, I walked over to the windows and saw it's raining outside. 放下报纸,我走到窗前,看到外面正在下雨。

分析:首先,这里 put 和 walk 两动作间隔很短,“我”是把报纸一放下,就紧接着走到窗前;其次,“放报纸”的动作本身不需要经历很长时间,不是在“慢镜头”似地 put down。这样一来,本句均不符合分词完成式的两种基本思维。再说,put 和 walk 两个动作不可能同时发生,必然是一先一后,因此不会造成

句子歧义。所以,我们不要说:Having put down...

### 重要总结:

到这一节,我们把有关分词的各种形式已讨论完毕。分词之所以很难,就是因为分词的形式较多,而且每一种形式都代表了一种思维动作,现列表总结如下:

(请记住每一种思维的典型例子!)

	主动意思	被动意思
一般动作	doing	done
	例: Unidentified <i>Flying</i> Objects	例: a <i>respected</i> writer
进行动作	doing	being done
	例: <i>falling</i> leaves	例: The question <i>being discussed</i> is very important.
完成动作	作状语: having done	作状语: having been done
	例: <i>Having failed</i> twice, he decided to give up.	例: All flights <i>having been cancelled</i> , they had to take the train.
	作定语: done(不及物)	作定语: done(及物)
	例: <i>fallen</i> leaves	例: <i>trained</i> employees
另外表示将来的被动动作:用 to be done 这一不定式的形式。		

## 第四节 现在分词与动名词的区别

### 59. 现在分词与动名词的区别

尽管有些语法书已不再区分现在分词和动名词,而是把二者

统称为-ing形式,但二者在用法上还是存在着明显的区别。

► 1. 二者在句中充当的句子成分不完全一样。

两者能够充当的成分有:

现在分词	状语	补足语	表语	定语
动名词	主语	宾语	表语	定语

前文说过,两种-ing词性是不同的:

- 1) 动名词是动词和名词的结合体。
- 2) 现在分词是动词和形容词或副词的结合体。

所以,在句中做主语、宾语的-ing形式应该属于动名词(这是动名词的名词性质的体现);而在句中做状语、补足语的-ing形式应该属于现在分词(这是现在分词副词和形容词性质的体现)。

a. I found *him standing* at the door.

b. I appreciate *you(r) helping* me.

a) 句中 *standing at the door* 是做宾语 *him* 的补足语,故此处 *standing* 为现在分词, *him* 不可改为 *his*。因为 *him standing* 不是动名词复合结构。

b) 句中 *helping* 是做动词 *appreciate* 宾语,故此处 *helping* 为动名词。*you* 可改为 *your*, 因为 *you(r) helping* 是动名词复合结构, *you* 是动名词 *helping* 逻辑上的主语。

c. We sat *talking about* college life on the grass.

*talking about...* 在句中做伴随状语,修饰动词 *sat*,故为现在分词。

d. He avoided *assuming* his responsibility.

*assuming...* 在句中做 *avoided* 的宾语,故为动名词。

e. *Reading poetry* on the stage is one of her strong suits.

reading poetry 做主语,故为动名词。

- f. **Reading** the letter, she burst out crying.

reading the letter 做状语表时间,故为现在分词。

## ► 2. 作表语时的区别

二者均可做表语,但现在分词作表语,修饰句子主语,说明主语的性质特征;而动名词作表语则说明句子主语的具体内容是什么。一般作表语的-ing 大多是动名词。

- a. His hobby is **collecting** stamps. (动名词)
- b. Reading is **permitting** a men to talk a long time, and **refusing** you the right to answer. (动名词)
- c. These results are most **satisfying**. (现在分词)

## ► 3. 作定语时的区别

二者均可做定语,但现在分词作定语,表示被修饰名词的行为状态,通常含有进行意味,且均可改为定语从句;动名词作定语一般表示所修饰名词的用途,一般不可直接改为定语从句。一般作定语的-ing 大多是现在分词。

- a. A sleeping car = a car used for sleep (动名词)
- b. A sleeping child = a child who is sleeping (现在分词)
- c. A reading room = a room used for reading (动名词)
- d. A reading student = a student who is reading (现在分词)
- e. Growing pains = pains during the growth period 成长的烦恼(动名词)
- f. Growing children = children that are growing 正在长身体的孩子(现在分词)
- g. Boiling water = water that is boiling (现在分词)
- h. Boiling point = point at which water boils 而不是 point

which boils (动名词)

## 60. 动名词复合结构与现在分词短语的区别

这两者之间的区别是很多人不曾注意的。我们先看看这两种结构在形式上的相似性。现在分词短语通常是“名词 + doing”。前文说过,动名词复合结构通常是“所有格名词 + doing”构成,但在实际文章中,也经常见到用名词的普通格代替所有格来构成复合结构,因此,在形式上也是“名词 + doing”。例如:

- a. *Children objecting to* their parents, remarrying has become a common social problem. 孩子们反对他们父母再婚这已成为一个普遍的社会问题

这个句子原本应该是:

*Children's objecting to* their parents, remarrying *has become* a common social problem.

或进一步改成主语从句:

*That children object to their parents, remarrying* has become a common social problem.

所以,a句主语应该是 *Children objecting to their parents' remarrying* 这一动名词复合结构,并不是 *children* 这一复数名词。短语作主语时谓语动词要用单数,因此句中谓语用了 *has become* 而不是 *have become*。

a句不能改成一个定语从句的形式: *Children that object to...*

我们再分析下面这一句:

- b. *The children objecting to* this plan *stand* on the right please. 反对这个计划的孩子请站到右边来。

这句话相当于：

*The children that object to this plan stand on the right please.*

所以，b 句中的主语是 children，objecting to this plan 是一个现在分词短语，用来作定语修饰 children，相当于一个定语从句。主语是复数 children，所以谓语动词用 stand，而不是 stands。

b 句不能改成一个名词从句的形式：*That the children object to this plan* stands on the right.

我们再看一个分词短语作状语的例子：

- c. *So many directors being absent*, the board meeting had to be put off. 由于很多董事缺席，董事会只好延期。

这里的 so many directors being absent 是用作状语来说明原因，原句相当于：*As so many directors were absent*, the board meeting had to be put off. 因此只能是现在分词短语，因为动名词不能作状语。

从以上分析，我们得知，形式上都是“名词 + doing”，但在本质上是不同的：动名词复合结构要改成一个名词从句；而现在分词短语要改成一个定语从句或状语从句。据此，我们就可以将二者区分开来。

## 第五节 分词作补足语

### 61. 分词作补足语

► 1. 在感官动词(如: find, hear, smell, observe, watch, notice, etc.)之后,我们可以用两类分词作宾语补足语。例如:

- a. I heard him *criticized* many times. 我听见他多次受批评。
- b. We saw the sun *rising* from behind the trees.
- c. You can see the vapor *rising* from the wet clothes when they are hung on the fire.
- d. Customer: Your dog seems very fond of watching you *cutting hair*.

Barber: It isn't that. Sometimes I snip off a bit of a customer's ear.

顾客:你的狗似乎很喜欢看你给别人理发嘛。

理发师:不是这么回事,而是因为我常常会剪掉客人们一点耳朵什么的。

- e. A teacher entered the classroom and noticed a girl student *sitting* near the door with her feet in the aisle and chewing gum. "Ethel," exclaimed the teacher, "take that gum out of your mouth and put your feet in." 一位老师走进教室后,发现有位女生坐在门边,脚伸到过道里,嘴里还嚼着口香糖。这位老师就大声喊道:“埃塞尔,把口香糖从嘴里吐出来,把你的脚放进去!”



- 2. 在这些动词之后,我们也可以用不带 to 的不定式作补足语。二者区别是:用现在分词,强调动作在进行;用不定式则表示一般的动作或一个动作自始至终的全过程。请看例句:

- a. When I glanced out of the window I saw Mary ***crossing*** the road.
- b. I watched him ***step*** off the pavement, ***cross*** the road, and ***disappear*** into the post office. (我看见他走下人行道,穿过马路,进了邮局,再也不见了。)
- c. In the park you often see people ***do shadowboxing***. 在公园里,你经常能见到人们在打太极拳。
- d. I saw him ***doing shadowboxing*** when I came in. 我进来时,看见他正在打太极拳。

## 第六节 分词构成的复合形容词

现在分词和过去分词可分别与名词、形容词、副词构成复合形容词。那么它们用法有何区别?究竟什么时候用“名词(或形容词、副词)+现在分词”构成的复合形容词,什么时候又用“名词(或形容词、副词)+过去分词”构成的复合形容词?这个问题有一定的难度。为了阐述清楚,我们先来分析讨论“外部”和“内部”两方面的关系。

1. 外部关系:指(现在或过去)分词与它所修饰的名词的关系。如:English-speaking countries。这里的外部关系即指现在分词 *speaking* 和它所修饰的名词 *countries* 之间的关系。

2. 内部关系:指分词与能构成复合形容词的其他词(名词、形容词、副词)之间的关系。如:English-speaking countries,这里的内部关系即指现在分词 *speaking* 和能构成复合形容词的名词

English 之间的关系。

以上两方面关系是正确使用这类复合形容词的关键,换句话说,究竟用什么构成形式的复合形容词,必须对这两方面关系分析清楚。

- 1) 首先分析“外部关系”,即先判断是应该用现在分词还是应该用过去分词;
- 2) 外部关系正确无误,则再分析“内部关系”,即判断应该用什么词性的词与分词构成复合形容词。只有在内部、外部关系都正确的情况下,复合形容词才使用对了。

例如以下所用复合形容词均不正确(请试着分析为什么):

- a. English-spoken countries (×)
- b. Water-covering land (×)
- c. A newly-building library (×)
- d. Naturally-occurred substances (×)
- e. Ready-making clothes (×)
- f. Nice-looking person (×)
- g. Good-done jobs (×)

## 6.2. 现在分词构成的复合形容词

这类复合形容词的总体特点:

由现在分词构成的复合形容词,具有共同的“外部关系”特点:即被修饰的名词与现在分词存在逻辑上的主谓关系,或者说被修饰的名词可以做现在分词的逻辑主语。这其实就是现在分词的特征。

既然外部关系存在共性,那么“内部关系”则是这一类复合形容词的个性特点。所以正确理解“内部关系”,成为正确使用这一类复合形容词的关键。

## ► 1. 名词+及物动词现在分词

- a. English-speaking countries (= the people in these countries speak English)
- b. peace-keeping force (= force keeps peace 维和部队)
- c. freedom-loving people (= people love freedom)
- d. a man-eating beast (= a beast eats a man)

特点:

- 1) 外部关系:前面说过,存在逻辑上的主谓关系,即被修饰的名词可以做现在分词的逻辑主语。
- 2) 内部关系:构成复合形容词的名词(English, peace)与现在分词(speaking, keeping)存在逻辑上的动宾关系(speak English, keep peace),即可以作现在分词逻辑上的宾语。

## ► 2. 名词+不及物动词现在分词

- a. a night-walking animal (= an animal walks at night)
- b. a winter-blooming plant (= a plant blooms in winter)
- c. a sky-flying kite (= a kite flies in the sky)
- d. a desert-dwelling tribe (= a tribe dwell in the desert)
- e. You may not be able to travel through the skies on your own. But you can be flying high in minutes with a *sky-walking* kite. (a kite walking in the sky)
- f. Through the centuries, he has served the *desert-dwelling* Arab as trusted mount, companion, war horse, and family pet.

特点:

- 1) 外部关系:前面说过,具有现在分词修饰名词的共同特征。
- 2) 内部关系:名词(如 night, winter)不是作现在分词逻辑宾语,而是与特定介词连用构成介词短语(如 at night, in winter)来修饰现在分词的行为动作(walking, blooming)。

### ► 3. 形容词 + 系动词现在分词

- a. a good-looking young man (= a young man looks good)
- b. a funny-looking clown (= a clown looks funny)
- c. an easy-going person (= a person goes easy)
- d. the nice-sounding music (= the music sounds nice)

特点:

- 1) 外部关系: 具有现在分词修饰名词的共同特征。
- 2) 内部关系: 形容词(good, nice)作现在分词(looking, sounding)逻辑上的表语(look good, sound nice)。

### ► 4. 副词 + 不及物动词现在分词

- a. far-reaching events (= events reach far 有深远影响的事件)
- b. hard-working people (= people work hard)
- c. a far-seeing politician (= a politician see far 具有远见卓识的政治家)
- d. naturally-occurring substances (= substances occur naturally)

特点:

- 1) 外部关系: 具有现在分词修饰名词的共同特征。
- 2) 内部关系: 副词(hard, naturally)作现在分词(working, occurring)逻辑上的状语(work hard, occur naturally)。所以我们不能说: *natural*-occurring substances (×)。
- 3) 作比较: 它与“形容词 + 现在分词”构成的复合形容词区别。

### 63. 过去分词构成的复合形容词

这类复合形容词的总体特点:

同现在分词构成复合形容词一样,由过去分词构成的复合形容词,也具有共同的“外部关系”特点:即被修饰的名词与过去分词存在逻辑上的动宾关系,或者说被修饰的名词可以做过去分词的逻辑宾语。这其实也就是过去分词的共同特征。

既然外部关系存在共性,那么“内部关系”则是这一类复合形容词的个性特点。所以正确理解“内部关系”,成为正确使用这一类复合形容词的关键。

#### ► 1. 名词+及物动词的过去分词:

- a. man-made fibers (= fibers made by man)
- b. hand-made gloves (= gloves made by hand)
- c. water-covered land (= land covered with water)
- d. state-owned firms (= firms owned by the state)
- e. helium-filled balloon (= a balloon filled with helium)

特点:

- 1) 外部关系:具有过去分词修饰名词的共同特征。
- 2) 内部关系:内部的名词(hand, water)表示过去分词(made, covered)动作的行为方式(made by hand)或状态(covered with water)。
- 3) 作比较:它与“名词+现在分词”区别。

#### ► 2. 形容词+及物动词的过去分词:

- a. a ready-made dress: made a dress ready, or a dress which is made ready 成衣
- b. a green-painted house: painted a house green, or a house

which is painted green.

c. A clean-shaven man: a man shaved himself clean

特点:

- 1) 外部关系:具有过去分词修饰名词的共同特征。
- 2) 内部关系:此处的形容词(ready, green)一般是作过去分词的逻辑宾语(dress, house)的补足语(made a dress *ready*, painted a house *green*)。
- 3) 作比较:它与“形容词+现在分词”区别。

### ► 3. 副词+及物动词的过去分词:

a. a well-bred young man (= a young man bred well)

b. the above-mentioned items (= the items mentioned above)

c. a newly-built library (= a library built newly)

d. a tightly-packed box (= a box packed tightly)

特点:

- 1) 外部关系:具有过去分词修饰名词的共同特征。
- 2) 内部关系:此处的副词(newly, tightly)一般是作过去分词(built, packed)的逻辑状语(built newly, packed tightly)。
- 3) 作比较:它与“形容词+过去分词”及“副词+现在分词”的区别。

此外还有:

- 1) 形容词+名词+ed

warm-hearted, cold-blooded, narrow-minded, blue-eyed, near-sighted, long-haired, lighter-skinned, middle-aged, ill-humored, bad-tempered, etc.

- 2) 数词+名词+ed

one-eyed camel, two-faced person, ten-storyed building, three-legged table, etc.

## 第六章 分词综合练习

### 6.1 用括号中动词的适当形式填空(两种分词的区别)

1. My two \_\_\_\_\_ (grow) children have both finished college.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (grow) children need good nourishment.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) snow was frozen hard.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) snowflakes in the sky are beautiful.
5. I love the noise of \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) rain.
6. More traffic will be able to pass on the \_\_\_\_\_ (widen) road.
7. Clint can't bear the smell of \_\_\_\_\_ (burn) bread.
8. Stay away from the \_\_\_\_\_ (burn) coal.
9. After jumping into the water, the lifeguard rescued the \_\_\_\_\_ (drown) child.
10. The mother of the \_\_\_\_\_ (drown) child was grieved to death.
11. Dick jumped out of the way of the \_\_\_\_\_ (approach) train.
12. The manager needs another copy of the \_\_\_\_\_ (sign) contract.
13. The \_\_\_\_\_ (return) letter had no stamps on it.
14. I've heard him \_\_\_\_\_ (criticize) many times.
15. One should always be careful with \_\_\_\_\_ (load) guns.
16. The composer was very happy to hear his works \_\_\_\_\_ (play) by the famous orchestra.
17. Do you know the girl \_\_\_\_\_ (play) the violin?

18. Today's farmers have increased milk production greatly through \_\_\_\_\_ (improve) methods of breeding, feeding and managing dairy cattle.

6.2 单项选择(分词的逻辑主语)

19. Before singing the school song, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a poem was recited  
B. recited a poem  
C. they recited a poem  
D. they have recited a poem
20. Working like a telescope, \_\_\_\_\_ the size of objects at great distances.  
A. which magnifies a telephoto lens  
B. a telephoto lens magnifies  
C. a telephoto lens which magnifies  
D. and magnifying a telephoto lens
21. Jumping into the water, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the drowning child was rescued  
B. the drowned child was rescued  
C. the lifeguard rescued the drowning child  
D. the lifeguard rescued the drowned child
22. After jumping out of a boat, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the shark bites the man  
B. the shark bit the man  
C. the man was bitten by a shark  
D. the man is bitten by a shark
23. \_\_\_\_\_, the dog was fed.  
A. After doing my homework  
B. To have done my homework



- C. After I did my homework  
D. My homework was done
24. \_\_\_\_\_, we went swimming.  
A. Being a hot day  
B. Due to a hot day  
C. It was a hot day  
D. The day being hot
25. \_\_\_\_\_, all the quarrels came to an end.  
A. The lost money was found  
B. Finding the lost money  
C. Because the lost money found  
D. With the lost money found
26. \_\_\_\_\_ James Bland, "Carry Me Back to Old Virginny"  
was adopted as the state song of Virginia in 1940.  
A. Was written by  
B. Writing by  
C. He wrote the  
D. Written by
27. Playing the trumpet with dazzling originality, \_\_\_\_\_  
dominated jazz for 20 years.  
A. Louis Armstrong  
B. the influence of Louis Armstrong  
C. the music of Louis Armstrong  
D. Louis Armstrong's talent
28. \_\_\_\_\_ in a recent science competition, the three stu-  
dents were awarded scholarships totaling \$ 21,000.  
A. To be judged the best  
B. Having judged the best  
C. Judged the best

- D. Judging the best
29. \_\_\_\_\_ to steel, chromium increases the metal's hardness.
- A. Added  
B. In addition  
C. Adding  
D. Adds
30. Bob was lying on the beach, his hands \_\_\_\_\_ under his head.
- A. were crossing  
B. were crossed  
C. crossing  
D. crossed
31. Many strange new means of transport have been developed in our century, the strangest of them \_\_\_\_\_ perhaps the hovercraft.
- A. is  
B. being  
C. will be  
D. has been
32. No one else \_\_\_\_\_ willing to go, he offered to take the message.
- A. was  
B. had been  
C. were  
D. being
33. \_\_\_\_\_, a man who expresses himself effectively is sure to succeed more rapidly than a man whose command of language is poor.

- A. Other things being equal
  - B. Were other things equal
  - C. To be equal to other things
  - D. Other things to be equal
34. Maggie ran back to the kitchen, eggs \_\_\_\_\_ carefully in her hands.
- A. to be held
  - B. held
  - C. were held
  - D. holding
35. Agriculture is the country's chief source of wealth, wheat \_\_\_\_\_ by far the biggest cereal crop.
- A. is
  - B. being
  - C. has been
  - D. to be
36. All things \_\_\_\_\_, the planned trip will have to be called off.
- A. considered
  - B. be considered
  - C. considering
  - D. having considered

### 6.3 单项选择(分词的完成式)

37. A new technique \_\_\_\_\_, the yields as whole increased by 20 percent.
- A. working out
  - B. having been worked out
  - C. having worked out

- D. to have been worked out
38. \_\_\_\_\_ that everything was in place, he locked up the shop and went home.
- A. Checking
  - B. Having checked
  - C. Being checked
  - D. Having been checked
39. The dying soldier had the message \_\_\_\_\_ straight to the commander.
- A. sent
  - B. to be sent
  - C. be sent
  - D. being sent
40. \_\_\_\_\_ the earth to be flat, many feared that Columbus would fall off the edge of the earth.
- A. Having believed
  - B. Believing
  - C. Believed
  - D. Being believed
41. \_\_\_\_\_ many times in a row, the opponent decided to give up fighting.
- A. Having defeated
  - B. Having been defeated
  - C. For having been defeated
  - D. As having been defeated
42. With production \_\_\_\_\_ up steadily, the factory needs an ever-increasing supply of raw materials.
- A. having gone
  - B. going

- C. to go  
D. having been going
43. The supermarket is very crowded on Sundays, with people \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. going in and out  
B. to go in and out  
C. gone in and out  
D. having gone in and out
44. The fog \_\_\_\_\_ dense, all the planes were suspended.  
A. is  
B. was  
C. being  
D. having been
45. The decision \_\_\_\_\_, what is to be done now is how to carry it out.  
A. been made  
B. being made  
C. having been made  
D. being making
46. There seemed little hope that the explorer, \_\_\_\_\_ in the tropical forest, would find his way through it.  
A. to he deserted  
B. having deserted  
C. to have been deserted  
D. having been deserted
47. The destructive fire \_\_\_\_\_, the firefighters recommended the occupants' getting an alarm device.  
A. having been put out  
B. heing put out

- C. had been put out
- D. was put out

#### 6.4 单项选择(分词作补足语)

48. You will see this product \_\_\_\_\_ wherever you go.
- A. to be advertised
  - B. advertised
  - C. advertise
  - D. advertising
49. The manager promised to keep me \_\_\_\_\_ of how our business was going on.
- A. to be informed
  - B. on informing
  - C. informed
  - D. informing
50. Corn originated in the New World and thus was not known in Europe until Columbus found it \_\_\_\_\_ in Cuba.
- A. being cultivated
  - B. having cultivated
  - C. been cultivated
  - D. cultivating
51. When I caught him \_\_\_\_\_ me I stopped buying things there and started dealing with another shop.
- A. cheat
  - B. cheating
  - C. to cheat
  - D. to be cheating
52. He was caught \_\_\_\_\_ his classmate's money the other

day.

A. to steal

B. stealing

C. to have stolen

D. having stolen

53. Mrs. Douglas unknowingly left a package \_\_\_\_\_ on the shop counter.

A. laying

B. to lie

C. laid

D. lying

54. His remarks left me \_\_\_\_\_ about his real purpose.

A. wondered

B. wonder

C. to wonder

D. wondering

55. Next time I catch you \_\_\_\_\_, I'll turn you in to the police.

A. stealing from others' pockets

B. steal from other's pockets

C. stealing other's pockets

D. to steal from other's pockets

56. They'll have you \_\_\_\_\_ if you don't pay your taxes.

A. to be arrested

B. arrested

C. arrest

D. being arrested

57. "There is something wrong with the table." "yes, I can \_\_\_\_\_."

- A. feel it that it's moving
- B. feel it moves
- C. feel it moving
- D. feel it to move

58. The hall was too noisy for the speaker to make himself

\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. hear
- B. hearing
- C. being heard
- D. heard

### 6.5 动名词与现在分词的区别

分析下列短文中-ing 动词所充当的成分,并判断其是动名词还是现在分词。

Passage 1:

#### Pavarotti, Opera Star Finds Creative Passion in *Painting*

Tenor Luciano Pavarotti holds a handkerchief whenever he sings in concert. Yet in real life he is more likely to be found *holding* a paintbrush. For his great love is *painting* vividly colored pictures of Italian villages and seascapes. What he likes best about *painting* is its contrast to opera, where the challenge is to use one's talents to bring to life the works of others. "When I finish a canvas, I feel I have created a world."



Passage 2:

**Nobody Can Decipher My Handwriting**

One of his friends came to him *saying*, "I have a brother *living* in the capital. Would you mind *writing* him a letter for me?" "But I don't think I have time to go to the city!" he said.

"I am not *asking* you to go to the city," the friend explained, "I only asked if you would be kind enough to write him a letter." "I understand you perfectly the first time," he replied, "But nobody can decipher (译解密码) my handwriting except myself. So if I'm not there to read it to him, it's no use *writing*. That's why I say I am not going to the capital."

Passage 3:

**Break the Ice**

There was a mutual attraction between my sister and a trainee *working* at her office. However, both *being shy*, they could barely even speak to each other.

During an office party, my sister went into the kitchen to get a drink and the trainee followed. *Opening* the freezer, he took out some ice, placed it on the work surface and began *smashing* it with a tin of coffee. *Smiling*, he explained, "I just wanted to break the ice between us."

6.6 分析下列句子中黑体部分是动名词复合结构还是分词短语，并翻译成汉语。

59. I don't see how you can avoid *the matter being discussed*.

60. *The matter being discussed* is of great importance to your writing.
61. *Children objecting to* their parents remarrying has become a social problem.
62. *The children objecting to* this proposal stand on the right, please.
63. *The children objecting to* this proposal surprised us all.
64. *Children bringing* newspapers can get \$ 10 a day.
65. Last night I was awakened by *someone tapping* at the door.
66. I find myself resentful at having to talk to *someone wearing* sunglasses. Worst of all are those mirrored-lens sunglasses that, when you look into them, throw back two slightly distorted pictures of yourself.
67. I remember *my parents taking* me to the zoo.
68. When I was a child, I would take a flashlight to bed with me so that I could read comic books without *my parents knowing* about it.
69. The noise of the *desks being opened and closed* could be heard out in the street.
70. Along with approximately 180 soldiers, he chose to fight to the death against *an army numbering* in the thousands.
71. There was no chance of *Davy emerging* from the battle alive.
72. With the *defenders refusing* to raise the white flag, Santa Anna's soldiers would take no prisoners.
73. We were greatly encouraged by the news of *China having launched* another man-made satellite.

- ### 6.7 辨别改错(分词构成复合形容词)

77. If a hydrogen-filling balloon is brought near a flame, it  
A B C  
will explode.  
D

79. Because the diamond is the hardest natural occurring substance, it is used in industry for cutting, grinding, and boring other hard materials.

- ### 6.8 单项选择(综合练习)

- 327

- D. rapid expand
85. \_\_\_\_\_ an answer, they decided to send an express telegram to them.
- A. Having received not  
B. Not received  
C. Received not  
D. Not having received
86. Niagara Falls is a great tourist attraction, \_\_\_\_\_ millions of visitors every year.
- A. to draw  
B. drawing  
C. to be drawn  
D. draws
87. Language is a highway, \_\_\_\_\_ all people and all ages.
- A. to link  
B. linking  
C. linked  
D. links
88. The computer works very fast, \_\_\_\_\_ data at the speed of light.
- A. having handled  
B. handling  
C. handled  
D. handles
89. Though \_\_\_\_\_ no Japanese, Charles was able to communicate with them.
- A. having understood  
B. understanding  
C. understood

D. being understood

90. This crop has similar qualities to the previous one, \_\_\_\_\_ both wind-resistant and adapted to the same type of soil.

A. being

B. been

C. to be

D. having been

91. The speech which he made \_\_\_\_\_ the project has bothered me greatly.

A. being concerned

B. concerned

C. be concerned

D. concerning

92. The question \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow is whether income tax should be increased.

A. to debate

B. to be debated

C. debated

D. that it will be debated

93. After a few rounds of talks, both sides regarded the territory dispute \_\_\_\_\_.

A. being settled

B. to be settled

C. had settled

D. as settled

94. As early as 1647 Ohio made a decision that free, tax-supported schools should be established in every town \_\_\_\_\_ 50 households or more.

- A. having
  - B. to have
  - C. to have had
  - D. having had
95. After the Arab states won independence, great emphasis was laid on expanding education, with girls as well as boys \_\_\_\_\_ to go to school.
- A. to be encouraged
  - B. being encouraged
  - C. been encouraged
  - D. be encouraged
96. Don't get your schedule \_\_\_\_\_; stay with us in this class.
- A. to change
  - B. changing
  - C. changed
  - D. change
97. No matter how frequently \_\_\_\_\_. The works of Beethoven always attract large audiences.
- A. performing
  - B. performed
  - C. to be performed
  - D. being performed
98. \_\_\_\_\_ with the picture, Mary tore it to pieces.
- A. Dissatisfying thoroughly
  - B. To dissatisfy thoroughly
  - C. Being thoroughly dissatisfied
  - D. To be thoroughly dissatisfied
99. \_\_\_\_\_ with the size of the whole earth, the highest

mountain does not seem high at all.

- A. When compared
- B. Compare
- C. While comparing
- D. Comparing

100. The guard walked through the train \_\_\_\_\_ everyone's ticket.

- A. inspecting
- B. inspected
- C. being inspected
- D. to be inspected

101. \_\_\_\_\_ nothing to talk about, the head said good-bye and went out of the room.

- A. There was
- B. Being
- C. As there being
- D. There being

102. \_\_\_\_\_, the price would be reasonable.

- A. All things are considered
- B. For all things consider
- C. All things considered
- D. If all things considered

103. Intended to display the work of twentieth-century artists, \_\_\_\_\_ in 1929.

- A. the opening of the Museum of Modern Art
- B. so the Museum of Modern Art opened
- C. why the Museum of Modern Art opened
- D. the Museum of Modern Art opened

104. \_\_\_\_\_ at the turn of the century, the Minnesota State



Capital building is made of white granite and marble.

- A. Erected
- B. Was erected
- C. To erect it
- D. Erecting

105. Really? She had her driving license \_\_\_\_\_ for reckless driving?

- A. withdraw
- B. withdrawing
- C. withdrew
- D. withdrawn

106. With such a strong wind \_\_\_\_\_, the wire may break at any time.

- A. blows
- B. blowing
- C. blew
- D. is blowing

107. \_\_\_\_\_ left before the deadline, I am afraid I can't finish the experiment on time.

- A. Although such a short time
- B. It is such a short time
- C. With so short time
- D. With such a short time

108. We have to go to other places to find a crane, there \_\_\_\_\_ no crane here that stands idle.

- A. is
- B. to be
- C. being
- D. having been

109. The article opens and closes with descriptions of two news reports, each \_\_\_\_\_ one major point in contrast with the other.
- A. makes
  - B. made
  - C. is to make
  - D. making
110. As a pianist, he can hardly stand hearing a piano \_\_\_\_\_ so badly.
- A. playing
  - B. being played
  - C. to play
  - D. having played
111. \_\_\_\_\_ of the burden of ice, the balloon climbed up and drifted to the South.
- A. To be free
  - B. Freeing
  - C. To free
  - D. Freed
112. Geophysicists have collaborated with archaeologists and anthropologists to study the magnetic properties of pottery and fireplaces at sites \_\_\_\_\_ by early humans.
- A. occupied
  - B. occupying
  - C. which occupy
  - D. were occupied
113. During the course of its growth, a frog undergoes a true metamorphosis \_\_\_\_\_ with a fishlike larval stage.
- A. begin

- B. began  
C. beginning  
D. is begun
114. \_\_\_\_\_ you should have no trouble with the difficult work.  
A. Knowing this  
B. If you are knowing this  
C. From knowing this  
D. If you had known this
115. One should never lose one's heart when \_\_\_\_\_ temporary difficulties.  
A. confronted with  
B. confront with  
C. confronting with  
D. confronted
116. The difference between a winner and loser is, when \_\_\_\_\_ immense difficulties, the former never loses heart.  
A. confronted with  
B. confronting with  
C. it is confronted with  
D. confront with
117. The other two children and three of the adults also had wounds \_\_\_\_\_ surgery.  
A. required  
B. require  
C. requiring  
D. to require
118. A stream of volcanic lava flows differently, \_\_\_\_\_ on

the sort of ground it flows over.

- A. to depend
- B. depending
- C. that depends
- D. when it depended

119. Just as the value of a telephone network increases with each new phone \_\_\_\_\_ to the system, so does the value of a computer system increase with each program that turns out.

- A. adding
- B. to have added
- C. to add
- D. added

120. To everybody's surprise, the meeting ended, with nothing \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. settled
- B. being settled
- C. settling
- D. to settle

121. These are examples of the problems \_\_\_\_\_ by science that we in America and other societies face.

- A. to be posed
- B. that has been posed
- C. posed
- D. posing

122. \_\_\_\_\_ from general worker-protection laws, women workers are also satisfied with special laws designed to protect them.

- A. Being benefited

- B. Benefiting  
C. Benefited  
D. Been benefited
123. Efforts should be made to cultivate a business and legal environment \_\_\_\_\_ fair competition between national industries and foreign-funded enterprises.  
A. facilitate  
B. facilitated  
C. facilitating  
D. to be facilitating
124. A similar system has been used to aid in the removal of brain tumors in children, a procedure \_\_\_\_\_ extremely risky.  
A. to be considered  
B. considered  
C. to have been considered  
D. considering
125. \_\_\_\_\_ any previous experience, John doesn't stand a chance of getting that job.  
A. Not having  
B. Not having had  
C. Having not  
D. Having not had
126. I picked my way through the wet grass, my feet \_\_\_\_\_ the saturated soil.  
A. sank into  
B. to sink into  
C. being sunk into  
D. sinking into

127. \_\_\_\_\_ the financial means to remain independent, Thomas Edison was compelled to seek employment as a night telegraph operator.
- A. He was deprived of
  - B. That he was deprived of
  - C. Although he was deprived of
  - D. Deprived of
128. Everything \_\_\_\_\_ into consideration, Bob is more suitable for the job.
- A. taking
  - B. being taken
  - C. to be taken
  - D. taken
129. Electrical resistance is a common property of all materials, \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. differ only in degree
  - B. only in degree it differs
  - C. it only differs in degree
  - D. differing only in degree
130. \_\_\_\_\_ for her anthropological research, Miss Mead also was involved with the World Federation Mental Health.
- A. Noted primarily
  - B. Noting primarily
  - C. Being primarily noted
  - D. Having primarily noted
131. \_\_\_\_\_, she went back to her room.
- A. There was no cause for alarm
  - B. There being no cause for alarm

- C. There be no cause for alarm  
D. There has been no cause for alarm
132. The human skeleton consists of more than two hundred bones \_\_\_\_\_ together by tough and relatively inelastic connective tissues call ligaments.  
A. bound  
B. to bind  
C. binding  
D. bind them
133. The criticism threw new light on the novel and the students found themselves \_\_\_\_\_ it with fresh eyes.  
A. read  
B. reading  
C. to read  
D. having read
134. The carat, \_\_\_\_\_ as a unit for weighing gems, derived its name from the Greek word for the carob bean, a small weight.  
A. is still used  
B. still used  
C. still is used  
D. it is still used
135. Anna was reading a piece of science fiction, completely \_\_\_\_\_ to the outside world.  
A. being lost  
B. having lost  
C. losing  
D. lost
136. He wasn't asked to take on the chairmanship of the so-

- ciety, \_\_\_\_\_ insufficiently popular with all members.
- A. being considered
  - B. considering
  - C. to be considered
  - D. having considered
137. With age, the mineral content of human bones decreases, \_\_\_\_\_ them more fragile.
- A. make
  - B. and to make
  - C. thereby making
  - D. which it makes
138. Alaska found the first years of its statehood costly because it had to take over the expense of services \_\_\_\_\_ previously by the federal government.
- A. to be provided
  - B. being provided
  - C. provided
  - D. providing
139. \_\_\_\_\_ 363 miles between the cities of Albany and Buffalo in New York State, the Erie Canal helped link the Atlantic Ocean with the Great Lakes.
- A. The extension of
  - B. The extension
  - C. Extending
  - D. Extends
140. It's easy to blame the decline of conversation on the pace of modern life and on the vague changes \_\_\_\_\_ place in our ever-changing world.
- A. taking



- B. to take
  - C. take
  - D. taken
141. Only a small portion of college youth have actually been drafted and sent to fight in Vietnam, as \_\_\_\_\_ to the nation's previous wars.
- A. compared
  - B. comparing
  - C. comparison
  - D. being compared
142. Though \_\_\_\_\_ in San Francisco, Dave had always preferred to record the plain facts of small-town life.
- A. raised
  - B. grown
  - C. developed
  - D. cultivated

#### 6.9 单项选择(提高题)

143. The vocabulary and grammatical differences between British and American English are so trivial and few as hardly \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. noticed
  - B. to be noticed
  - C. being noticed
  - D. to notice
144. The house was very quiet, \_\_\_\_\_ as it was on the side of a mountain.
- A. isolated
  - B. isolating

- C. being isolated  
D. having been isolated
145. \_\_\_\_\_ as it was at such a time, his work attracted much attention.  
A. Being published  
B. Published  
C. Publishing  
D. To be published
146. First designated in 1970, Earth Day has become an annual international event \_\_\_\_\_ concerns about environmental issues such as pollution.  
A. dedicated to raising  
B. dedicated raising  
C. dedicates to raise  
D. that dedicates to raising
147. The country's chief exports are iron ore, coal, coal, wool and cotton goods, wool \_\_\_\_\_ the most important of these.  
A. has been  
B. is  
C. being  
D. is being
148. With all the work \_\_\_\_\_, I don't know if I'll have time to go out.  
A. done  
B. to be done  
C. to do  
D. doing  
E. being done

149. I eventually found her \_\_\_\_\_ with her friends in a pub.  
A. sit/chatting  
B. sitting/to chat  
C. sitting/chatting  
D. sit/to chat
150. In Europe it is quite usual to cross your legs when you are sitting \_\_\_\_\_ to someone even at an important meeting.  
A. to talk  
B. to talking  
C. talking  
D. for talking
151. Along the rocky New England coast are small areas of sand gravel beach, some created from debris, \_\_\_\_\_ by the action of ocean storms.  
A. others build up  
B. others built up  
C. others are build up  
D. others were built up
152. She answered the door \_\_\_\_\_ a magazine she \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. carried/read  
B. carrying/had been reading  
C. carried/was reading  
D. carrying/had read
153. The sale usually takes place outside the house, with the audience \_\_\_\_\_ on benches, chairs or boxes.  
A. having seated  
B. seating

- C. seated  
D. having been seated
154. All flights \_\_\_\_\_ because of the storm, they decided to take the train.  
A. having canceled  
B. have been canceled  
C. having been canceled  
D. were canceled
155. There was a very interesting remark in a book by an Englishman that I read recently \_\_\_\_\_ what he thought was a reason for this American characteristic.  
A. giving  
B. gave  
C. to give  
D. given
156. Peter went to the Congress very early, \_\_\_\_\_ to push out the dissidents as many as he could.  
A. his mind being made up  
B. with his mind made up  
C. with his mind making up  
D. his mind making up
157. He smiled, stared at her hand for a moment, then \_\_\_\_\_ away quickly.  
A. walked  
B. walking  
C. to walk  
D. walks
158. The delegates were seen \_\_\_\_\_ in the hall but they didn't make known the problems \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. be assembling/discussed
  - B. assembling/discussed
  - C. assembled/discussing
  - D. being assembled/discussing
159. How many of us \_\_\_\_\_ say, a meeting that is irrelevant to us would be interested in the discussion?
- A. attended
  - B. attending
  - C. to attend
  - D. have attended
160. Anyone with half an eye on the unemployment figures knew that the assertion about economic recovery \_\_\_\_\_ just around the corner was untrue.
- A. would be
  - B. to be
  - C. was
  - D. being
161. The letters of Abigail Adams to her husband and future President, John, \_\_\_\_\_ during the American Revolution, conveyed a vivid picture of the times.
- A. were written
  - B. which written
  - C. written
  - D. written when
162. Relative humidity is the amount of water vapor the air contains at a certain temperature \_\_\_\_\_ with the amount it could hold at that temperature.
- A. to compare
  - B. compared

- C. comparing  
D. compares
163. All eels spawn in the sea, the eggs hatching into transparent, ribbon-like larvae \_\_\_\_\_, feeding until they metamorphose into small eels.  
A. that drift about  
B. drift about  
C. about drifting  
D. drift about them
164. Founded around 1075, the Acoma Pueblo is considered \_\_\_\_\_ settlement in the United States.  
A. the oldest continuously occupied  
B. occupied continuously the oldest  
C. the oldest occupied continuously  
D. continuously the oldest occupied

#### 6.10 辨别改错

165. The Portuguese give a great deal of credit to one man  
A B  
for having promoted sea travel, that man was Prince  
C D  
Henry the navigator, who lived in the 15<sup>th</sup> century.
166. Beethoven, the great musician, wrote nine symphonies  
A  
in his life, most of them were written after he had lost  
B C  
his hearing.  
D
167. Writing in verse, lucid style, the book describes the au-  
A

D

- D

- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| B | C | D |
|---|---|---|

- D

- D

- C D

- |     | <u>B</u> | <u>C</u> |
|-----|----------|----------|
| 1   | 1        | 1        |
| 2   | 1        | 1        |
| 3   | 1        | 1        |
| 4   | 1        | 1        |
| 5   | 1        | 1        |
| 6   | 1        | 1        |
| 7   | 1        | 1        |
| 8   | 1        | 1        |
| 9   | 1        | 1        |
| 10  | 1        | 1        |
| 11  | 1        | 1        |
| 12  | 1        | 1        |
| 13  | 1        | 1        |
| 14  | 1        | 1        |
| 15  | 1        | 1        |
| 16  | 1        | 1        |
| 17  | 1        | 1        |
| 18  | 1        | 1        |
| 19  | 1        | 1        |
| 20  | 1        | 1        |
| 21  | 1        | 1        |
| 22  | 1        | 1        |
| 23  | 1        | 1        |
| 24  | 1        | 1        |
| 25  | 1        | 1        |
| 26  | 1        | 1        |
| 27  | 1        | 1        |
| 28  | 1        | 1        |
| 29  | 1        | 1        |
| 30  | 1        | 1        |
| 31  | 1        | 1        |
| 32  | 1        | 1        |
| 33  | 1        | 1        |
| 34  | 1        | 1        |
| 35  | 1        | 1        |
| 36  | 1        | 1        |
| 37  | 1        | 1        |
| 38  | 1        | 1        |
| 39  | 1        | 1        |
| 40  | 1        | 1        |
| 41  | 1        | 1        |
| 42  | 1        | 1        |
| 43  | 1        | 1        |
| 44  | 1        | 1        |
| 45  | 1        | 1        |
| 46  | 1        | 1        |
| 47  | 1        | 1        |
| 48  | 1        | 1        |
| 49  | 1        | 1        |
| 50  | 1        | 1        |
| 51  | 1        | 1        |
| 52  | 1        | 1        |
| 53  | 1        | 1        |
| 54  | 1        | 1        |
| 55  | 1        | 1        |
| 56  | 1        | 1        |
| 57  | 1        | 1        |
| 58  | 1        | 1        |
| 59  | 1        | 1        |
| 60  | 1        | 1        |
| 61  | 1        | 1        |
| 62  | 1        | 1        |
| 63  | 1        | 1        |
| 64  | 1        | 1        |
| 65  | 1        | 1        |
| 66  | 1        | 1        |
| 67  | 1        | 1        |
| 68  | 1        | 1        |
| 69  | 1        | 1        |
| 70  | 1        | 1        |
| 71  | 1        | 1        |
| 72  | 1        | 1        |
| 73  | 1        | 1        |
| 74  | 1        | 1        |
| 75  | 1        | 1        |
| 76  | 1        | 1        |
| 77  | 1        | 1        |
| 78  | 1        | 1        |
| 79  | 1        | 1        |
| 80  | 1        | 1        |
| 81  | 1        | 1        |
| 82  | 1        | 1        |
| 83  | 1        | 1        |
| 84  | 1        | 1        |
| 85  | 1        | 1        |
| 86  | 1        | 1        |
| 87  | 1        | 1        |
| 88  | 1        | 1        |
| 89  | 1        | 1        |
| 90  | 1        | 1        |
| 91  | 1        | 1        |
| 92  | 1        | 1        |
| 93  | 1        | 1        |
| 94  | 1        | 1        |
| 95  | 1        | 1        |
| 96  | 1        | 1        |
| 97  | 1        | 1        |
| 98  | 1        | 1        |
| 99  | 1        | 1        |
| 100 | 1        | 1        |

necessarily be inadequate to explain it.

D

174. The Committee adopted a resolution requiring the seven

A

auto-makers selling the most cars in the state making 2

B

C

percent of those vehicles emissions-free by 1998.

D

175. Plants synthesize carbohydrates from water and carbon

A

dioxide with the aid of energy is derived from sunlight.

B

C

D

176. Charlotte Perkins Gilman is known primarily as an au-

A

thor of short stories, but she also wrote an influential

B

book argued for equal economic opportunities for wom-

C

D

en.

177. Government money appropriated for art in the 1930's

A

made possible hundreds of murals and statues still

B

admiration in small towns all over the United States.

C

D

178. Ulysses S. Kay was among the United States

A

composers visited the Soviet Union in 1958

B

to participate in a cultural exchange program.

C

D

179. Carrie Chapman was instrumental in passing the Nine-

A

B

teenth Amendment to the United States Constitution



- gives women the right to vote.  
C D
180. Carrie Chapman organized the League of Women Voters  
A  
after successfully campaign for the constitutional a-  
B C  
mendment that gave women the right to vote.  
D
181. With production having gone up steadily, the factory  
A B  
needs an ever-increasing supply of raw materials.  
C D
182. Financier Andrew Mellon donated most of his magnifi-  
A  
cent art collection to the National Gallery of Art, where  
B C  
it is now locating.  
D
183. Like all ecological systems, a forest is made up of a liv-  
A  
ing environment and a nonliving environment, the  
latter is composed of air, rocks, soil, and water.  
B C D
184. Won its war for independence in 1783, the United  
A  
States then struggled to establish is own economic and  
B C  
financial system.  
D
185. Bacteria lived in the soil play a vital role in recycling the  
A B C  
carbon and nitrogen needed by plants.  
D
186. Some snakes have hollow teeth are called fangs  
A B

that they use to poison their victims.

C

D

187. Compare with the jagged estuaries of the Atlantic  
           A                          B                  C  
 coast, the Pacific coast seems almost uniformly  
   D  
 straight.

188. Discovery in 1789 and isolated from other elements in  
       A                                  B                  C  
 1841, uranium is valued as a source of atomic energy.

D

189. Celery, an edible plant is having long stalks topped with  
                   A                                  B                                  C  
 feathery leaves, grows best in cool weather.

D

190. In 1862 Abraham Lincoln signed the Homestead Act,  
allows settlers 160 acres of free land after they had  
       A                  B                                  C  
 worked it for five years.

D

191. After a heavy rain, a rainbow may spread all the way  
       A  
across the sky, its two ends seem to rest on the Earth.  
       B                                  C                  D

## 第六章 分词综合练习参考答案

### 6.1

- |             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. grown    | 10. drowned     |
| 2. growing  | 11. approaching |
| 3. fallen   | 12. signed      |
| 4. falling  | 13. returned    |
| 5. falling  | 14. criticized  |
| 6. widened  | 15. loaded      |
| 7. burned   | 16. played      |
| 8. burning  | 17. playing     |
| 9. drowning | 18. improved    |

### 6.2-6.4

- |              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 19-20: CB    | 21-25: CCCDD | 26-30: DACAD |
| 31-35: BDABB | 36-40: ABBAB | 41-45: BBACC |
| 46-50: DABCA | 51-55: BBDDA | 56-58: BCD   |

### 6.5

#### passage 1:

painting 动名词

holding 分词

painting 动名词

painting 动名词

#### passage 2:

saying 分词

living 分词

writing 动名词

asking 分词

writing 动名词

**passage 3:**

working 分词

being 分词

opening 分词

smashing 动名词

smiling 分词

## 6.6

59. 动名词复合结构

译文:我不知道你怎样才能避免讨论这个问题。

60. 分词作定语

译文:正在讨论的这个问题对你们写作很重要。

61. 动名词复合结构

译文:孩子们反对父母再婚,这已成为一个普遍的社会问题。

62. 分词作定语

译文:反对这个计划的孩子们请站到右边来。

63. 动名词复合结构

这些孩子竟然反对这一计划,真让我们很惊讶。

64. 分词作定语

译文:那些送报的孩子每天可以得到 10 美元。

65. 动名词复合结构

译文:昨晚有人敲门,把我吵醒了。

66. 分词作定语

译文:我很讨厌跟带着墨镜的人讲话,尤其是那种像镜子一样的太阳镜,因为你往里看时,反射出来的是两个你自己的变形的模样。

67. 动名词复合结构

译文:我还记得父母带我去动物园的情景。

68. 动名词复合结构

译文:小的时候,我习惯把手电筒带到床上,这样我可以在被窝里看连环画而不让父母发现。

69. 动名词复合结构

译文:课座椅被一开一关的噪音远远地在大街上都能听得见。

70. 分词作定语

译文:带着约 180 人的将士,他决定同几千人的敌军进行殊死搏斗。

71. 动名词复合结构

译文:大卫从战场上生还的希望渺茫。

72. 分词短语作状语

译文:由于敌人拒绝举旗投降, Santa Anna 将士们决定全部歼灭敌人,不抓俘虏。

73. 动名词复合结构

译文:听到中国又成功发射一颗人造卫星,我们都感到欢欣鼓舞。

74. 动名词复合结构

译文:任何人只要稍稍看看目前失业率的数字,就可知道断言经济复苏即将到来是毫无根据的。

75. 动名词复合结构

译文:动物的眼睛很容易被发现。怎样才能防止因为眼睛而破坏了环境对动物的保护作用呢?一个解决办法就是,当它们面临危险时把眼睛闭上。

## 6.7

76: A/sound-producing 77: A/hydrogen-filled  
 78: C/family-run 79: B/naturally 80: C/most poorly-taught  
 81: D/skinned

## 6.8-6.9

82-85: ACCD 86-90: BBBBA 91-95: DBDAB  
 96-100: CBCAA 101-105: DCDAD 106-110: BDCDB  
 111-115: DACAA 116-120: ACBDA 121-125: CBCBA  
 126-130: DDDDA 131-135: BABBD 136-140: ACCCA  
 141-145: AABAB 146-150: ACCCC 151-155: BBCCA  
 156-160: BABBD 161-164: CBAA

## 6.10

165. D/being	179. C/giving
166. B/written	180. C/campaigning
167. A/Written	181. B/going up
168. B/employing	182. D/located
169. C/made	183. C/composed
170. D/affected	184. A/Having won
171. D/taking	185. A/living
172. A/reflect	186. B/called
173. A/removing	187. A/compared
174. C/make	188. A/Discovered
175. C/derived	189. B/having
176. C/book arguing	190. A/allowing
177. C/admired	191. C/seeming
178. B/composers visiting	

## 从句的简化

在讨论完三大从句和三种非谓语动词形式之后,我们现在把从句和非谓语动词二者结合起来,来研究它们之间存在的内在联系,这就是从句的简化工作,即把结构较复杂的从句简化为精炼的非谓语形式。

### 64. 名词从句的简化

思路:英文中只有动名词和不定式具有名词特征,可以当成名词来使用。所以属于名词类的名词从句自然是简化成两种形式:一是简化为动名词;二是简化为不定式。

#### ► 1. 名词从句与动名词

由 that 引导的名词从句一般换成动名词来表达,通常采用动名词复合结构的形式。

1) that 引导的主语从句:

直接用动名词复合结构来替换主语从句,放在句首作主语。

- a. It surprised us *that John won the marathon*.
- b. *That John won the marathon* surprised us.
- c. *John's winning the marathon* surprised us.
- d. That he lost the game came as a surprise to everybody.
- e. *His losing the game* came as a surprise to everybody.

2) *that* 引导的同位语从句:

简化同位语从句时,先要在同位语从句所修饰的名词后边加上介词,通常是 *of* 来表示同位关系,然后把从句换成动名词复合结构。

- a. There was no chance *that Davy would come from the battle alive*. Davy 不可能从战场上生还。
- b. There was no chance *of Davy coming from the battle alive*.
- c. Anyone with half an eye on the unemployment figures knew that the assertion *that economic recovery would be just around the corner* was untrue. 任何人只要稍稍看一眼目前的失业率就能知道,有关经济复苏即将到来的断言是不符合事实的。
- d. Anyone with half an eye on the unemployment figures knew that the assertion *about economic recovery being just around the corner* was untrue.
- e. We were greatly encouraged by the news *that China had launched another man-made satellite*.
- f. We were greatly encouraged by the news *of China having launched another man-made satellite*.

3) *that* 引导的宾语从句简化:

宾语从句的简化较复杂,可转换成不定式或动名词,这与



主句谓语动词用法密切相关。例如：

- a. I hope *that I can drive to work in my own car*. 我希望能够开着自己的车去上班。
- b. I hope *to drive to work in my own car*. (hope 后要接不定式)
- c. I consider *that I will emigrate to America in the future*.
- d. I consider *emigrating to America in the future*. (consider 后要接动名词)

有的动词后边还需接介词，例如：

- e. Jane's mother insisted *that she should go swimming with her brother*.
- f. Jane's mother insisted *on her going swimming with her brother*.

综上所述，宾语从句是简化成动名词还是不定式形式，完全取决于主句谓语动词。因此，要求我们对动词的用法比较熟练。在前文已分别列出过接动名词或不定式作宾语的动词。

## ► 2. 名词从句与不定式

能简化成不定式的名词从句一般有两个共同的特征：

- 1) 名词从句谓语往往含有情态意义，多见的是 *should* 或 *can/could*。
  - 2) 通常是连接代词、连接副词以及 *whether* 引导的名词从句。
- a. I don't know *what I should do*.
  - b. I don't know *what to do*.
  - c. Please tell me *how I can get to the bus station*.
  - d. Please tell me *how to get to the bus station*.
  - e. She can't decide *whether she should go with him or stay*

*home.*

f. She can't decide *whether to go with him or (to) stay home.*

g. I haven't decided *whether I should vote for Clint.*

h. I haven't decided *whether to vote for Clint.*

## 65. 定语从句的简化

定语从句的简化就是把从句简化为短语。

如果关系代词在从句中作宾语,如:

The man *that* I saw at the party is my teacher.

*that* 作 *saw* 的宾语,此时,我们可以把 *that* 省去。但无法把从句简化为短语形式。

所以,定语从句的简化只能是关系词在从句中作主语的情况,我们才能简化为短语。

### ► 1. 从句中含有 be 动词

如果定语从句中含有 be 动词的形式,我们只需把关系词和 be 动词省去即简化成短语,往往是分词短语(主动的用现在分词,被动的用过去分词),或者也可以是形容词短语。例如:

定语从句	分词或形容词短语	翻译
Do you know the boy <i>who is playing</i> the violin?	Do you know the boy <i>playing</i> the violin?	你认识那位正在拉小提琴的男孩吗?(现在分词短语)
The man <i>who is standing</i> at the gate is my English teacher.	The man <i>standing</i> at the gate is my English teacher.	站在大门口的那位男士是我的英文老师。(现在分词短语)

Books <i>that are written</i> in English are more expensive.	Books <i>written</i> in English are more expensive.	英文版的书一般都较贵。(过去分词短语)
The car <i>that was repaired</i> yesterday by him is my brother's.	The car <i>repaired</i> yesterday by him is my brother's.	昨天他修理的那辆车是我哥哥的。(过去分词短语)
The people <i>who were responsible</i> for the incident were all punished.	The people <i>responsible</i> for the incident were all punished.	对此事负有责任的人都受到了惩罚。(形容词短语)

## ► 2. 从句中没有 be 动词

如果定语从句中没有 be 动词的形式,我们则可把从句主语(即关系代词)省去并且把动词变成现在分词-ing 形式。

定语从句	现在分词短语	翻译
They live in a room <i>that faces</i> the south.	They live in a room <i>facing</i> the south.	他们住在一间朝南的房子里。
Anyone <i>who touches</i> the wire will get an electric shock.	Anyone <i>touching</i> the wire will get an electric shock.	谁要是碰到这根电线就会遭到电击。
English has an alphabet <i>that consists of</i> 26 letters.	English has an alphabet <i>consisting of</i> 26 letters.	英语字母表是由 26 个字母组成的。

## ► 3. 用不定式替换定语从句

上面讨论的 1、2 两点主要是将定语从句替换成分词的形式，这是因为分词具备形容词的功能，主要就是用来作定语。而不定式也可当作形容词来用，在句中作定语。英文中规定，被 **the only**, **the last**, **the next**, 序数词，最高级形容词修饰的名词，其后所接的定语从句往往要用不定式来替换。（考试重点）

定语从句	不定式短语	翻译
The only one <i>that understands me</i> .	The only one <i>to understand me</i> .	惟一能够理解我的人。 (the only)
The next train <i>that arrives</i> is from New York.	The next train <i>to arrive</i> is from New York.	下一列到达的火车是从纽约开来的。(the next)
Clint was the second person <i>that fell</i> into this trap.	Clint was the second person <i>to fall</i> into this trap.	Clint 是第二个掉进陷阱的人。(the second)

## 66. 状语从句的简化

只有当状语从句的主语和主句的主语相同时，才能把状语从句换成短语。否则，会引起句义改变。例如：

While the teacher was lecturing to the class, I fell asleep.  
在老师讲课的时候，我睡着了。

若改成：While lecturing to the class, I fell asleep. 则意思是“当我在给这个班上课时，我睡着了。”这样显然不妥。

## ► 1. 从句含有 be 动词

如果状语从句中含有 be 动词的形式,我们只需把从句主语和 be 动词省去,即简化成短语。往往是分词短语(主动的用现在分词,被动的用过去分词),或者也可以是形容词短语或名词短语。这种省略主要常见于时间、地点、条件及让步状语从句中。

例如:

- a. Metals expand *when (they are) heated and contract when (they are) cooled*. (两个 when 后省略 they are) 金属具有热胀冷缩的特性。
- b. *When a student* in the university, he read a lot. (when 后省略了 he was)
- c. *While (he was) waiting*, he took out a magazine to read.
- d. A tiger can't be tamed *unless (it is) caught* very young.
- e. \_\_\_\_\_, Dr. Smith has long been a severe critic of the government's economic policies.
  - A. Although not being an economist himself
  - B. Although not an economist himself
  - C. Although not having been an economist himself
  - D. Although being no an economist himself

正确答案: B。从句相当于: Although he is not an economist himself, ...

## ► 2. 从句没有 be 动词

如果状语从句中没有 be 动词的形式,我们则可把从句主语省去并且把动词变成现在分词-ing 形式。

状语从句	现在分词短语	翻译
Since <i>I came</i> to Beijing, I have made many new friends.	Since <i>coming</i> to Beijing, I have made many new friends.	来到北京之后我交了很多朋友。
After <i>I finished</i> my homework, I fed the dog.	After <i>finishing</i> my homework, I fed the dog.	我把作业做完之后,就开始喂狗了。
After <i>he jumped</i> out of a boat, the man was bitten by a shark.	After <i>jumping</i> out of a boat, the man was bitten by a shark.	跳出小船后,这位男子被鲨鱼咬伤了。

## 第七章 从句简化练习

### 7.1 简化下列名词从句。

1. The student denied that he had cheated on the exam.
2. That the president was involved in the fraud is obvious.
3. I consider that this is a far-reaching event.
4. That he lost the game came as a surprise to everybody.
5. That he worked all night in the rain caused him to catch a bad cold.
6. The boy is worried about the possibility that he will fail in the exam.
7. That he tries sending her girlfriend flowers every day is the only way he can think of to gain her favor.
8. I remember that he once offered to help us if we ever got into trouble.
9. You must tell me the truth. I insist that you should tell the truth.
10. Nowhere in nature is aluminum found free, owing to the fact that it is always combined with other elements, most commonly with oxygen.
11. That children object to their parents remarrying has become a prevalent social problem.
12. The teacher said that he wouldn't tolerate that I arrived late every day.
13. That the girl was educated in an atmosphere of simple living was what her parents wished for.

7.2 简化下列名词从句。

14. The plumber told me how I could fix the leak in the sink.
15. Please tell me where I should meet you.
16. I don't know whether I should believe him or not.
17. Sam is getting dressed to go to a party, but is having trouble deciding on what clothes he should wear.
18. He found two shirts he liked, but he had trouble deciding which one he should buy.
19. I was tongue-tied. I didn't what I should say.
20. Going to the school dance is a lot of fun. But sometimes, deciding who I can go with isn't easy.
21. A: I don't know what I should buy for her birthday. Got any suggestions?  
B: How about a book?

7.3 把下列定语从句简化为短语。

22. The train that is approaching the station is from Shanghai.
23. The woman who lives next door is very friendly.
24. The people who are waiting for the bus in the rain are getting wet.
25. The scientists who are researching the causes of cancer are making progress.
26. Our school has a library which was built in 1900.
27. The car which caused the accident drove off.
28. We lived in an apartment that overlooked the sea.
29. Oceans continually lose by evaporation much of the river water that is constantly flowing into them.
30. Tornadoes(龙卷风) occur most often in the spring when



hot winds that rise over flat land encounter heavy, cold air.

31. I don't think he is the best man that does the job.
32. He thought that it might not be the best time that he should ask his boss for a raise.
33. Trains which leave from this station take an hour to get to London.
34. Clint was the only person that survived the air crash.
35. He was the last man that left the sinking ship.
36. Be sure to follow the instructions that are given at the top of the page.
37. The psychologists who study the nature of sleep have made important discoveries.
38. The conclusion which is presented in that book states that most of the automobiles which are produced by American industry have some defect.

#### 7.4 把下列作定语的分词短语还原成定语从句。

39. There is almost no end to the problems facing a head of state.
40. The photographs published in the newspaper were extraordinary.
41. Did you get the message concerning the special meeting?
42. The woman waiting to see you has applied for a job here.
43. The plane flying overhead is traveling north.
44. The sunlight coming through the window wakes me up early every morning.
45. Two-thirds of those arrested of car theft are under twenty years of age.

- 46. The man serving at the counter is very helpful
- 47. This job will suit students wanting to work during the holidays.
- 48. There's someone knocking at the door.
- 49. Customers complaining about the service should see the manager.
- 50. Passengers traveling on planes shouldn't smoke.

### 7.5 单选题(简化了的定语从句)

- 51. Oceans continually lose by evaporation much of the river water \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. to constantly flow into them
  - B. is constantly flowing into them
  - C. constantly flows into them
  - D. constantly flowing into them
- 52. Tornadoes, powerful, destructive wind storms, occur most often in the spring when hot winds \_\_\_\_\_ over flat land encounter heavy, cold air.
  - A. which to rise
  - B. that rising
  - C. are rising
  - D. rising
- 53. In 1938 Pearl S. Buck became the first American woman \_\_\_\_\_ the Nobel Prize for Literature.
  - A. receive
  - B. received
  - C. to receive
  - D. she received
- 54. The first explorer \_\_\_\_\_ California by land was Strong

- Smith, a trapper who crossed the southwestern deserts of the United States in 1825.
- A. that he reached
  - B. to reach
  - C. reached
  - D. reaching it
55. \_\_\_\_\_ often found in fruit and vegetables.
- A. Vitamin C, a trace element that is
  - B. For vitamin C, a trace element to be
  - C. Vitamin C, a trace element, is
  - D. Vitamin C, is that trace element.
56. The Amazon rain forests, \_\_\_\_\_ the earth's lungs, convert carbon dioxide in the atmosphere back into oxygen.
- A. functioning as
  - B. which functioning as
  - C. functions as
  - D. functioned as
57. Through a process \_\_\_\_\_ coalescence, water droplets in clouds grow to a size large enough to fall to earth. Be called
- A. calls
  - B. to be called
  - C. calling
  - D. called
58. Penicillin, \_\_\_\_\_ in the early 20th century, brought in the golden age of chemotherapy.
- A. to be discovered
  - B. discovering
  - C. discovery was

D. discovered

59. The mouse, like the keyboard, is a control device \_\_\_\_\_ to a computer.

A. connected

B. to connect it

C. and connect

D. that connect

60. An amendment to the Constitution \_\_\_\_\_ in Harry Truman's tenure limits the US presidency to two terms.

A. passing

B. to pass

C. passed

D. was passed

**7.6 把下列能够简化的状语从句简化为短语(有的不能简化)。**

61. While I was waiting for the bus, a brick fell on my head.

62. After I turned to the corner, I saw a tile fall off the roof.

63. After I turned to the corner, a tile fell off the roof.

64. When I opened the door of the refrigerator, the smell was bad.

65. While I was watching TV last night, the telephone rang.

66. Before I came to class, I had a cup of coffee.

67. After he had finished breakfast, he left the house and went to his office.

68. After she had completed her shopping, she went home.

69. Alex hurt his back while he was chopping wood.

70. You should always read a contract before you sign your name.

71. While I was trying to get to sleep last night, a mosquito

kept buzzing in my ear.

72. Since we arrived here, we have made many new friends.

73. After we looked at the map, we tried to find the right street.

### 7.7 单选题(简化了的状语从句)

74. A reagent is any chemical that reacts in a predictable way \_\_\_\_\_ with other chemicals.

- A. when mixed
- B. when is mixed
- C. it mixed
- D. when mixing

75. A beam of light will not bend round corners unless \_\_\_\_\_ to do so with the help of a reflecting device.

- A. made
- B. to be made
- C. being made
- D. having made

76. As a general rule, snakes don't bite unless \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. offended
- B. are offended
- C. they offended
- D. offending

77. She had said little so far, responding only briefly when \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. speaking
- B. spoken
- C. speaking to
- D. spoken to

78. \_\_\_\_\_, his family moved to America.  
A. When still a baby  
B. When a baby still  
C. When he was still a baby  
D. When being still a baby
79. \_\_\_\_\_ native to Europe, the daisy has now spread throughout most of North America.  
A. Although  
B. If it were  
C. In spite of  
D. That it is
80. In its pure state antimony has no important uses, but \_\_\_\_\_ with other substances, it is an extremely useful metal.  
A. when combined physically or chemically  
B. combined when physically or chemically  
C. the physical and chemical combination  
D. it is combined physically and chemically
81. Although pure diamond is colorless and transparent, \_\_\_\_\_ with other material it may appear in various colors, ranging from pastels to opaque black.  
A. but when contaminated  
B. but when contaminating  
C. when contaminated  
D. when contaminating
82. \_\_\_\_\_ classified as a carnivore, the North American grizzly bear eats berries and even grass.  
A. Just as  
B. Because of

- C. Although  
D. Either
83. \_\_\_\_\_ usually thought to end in northern New Mexico, the Rocky Mountains really extend southward to the frontier of Mexico.  
A. Despite  
B. To be  
C. While  
D. However
84. Nearly all trees contain a mix of polymers that can burn like petroleum \_\_\_\_\_ properly extracted.  
A. after  
B. if  
C. when it  
D. is
85. Although \_\_\_\_\_ rigid, bones exhibit a degree of elasticity that enables the skeleton to withstand considerable impact.  
A. apparently  
B. are apparently  
C. apparently their  
D. are they apparently
86. Although \_\_\_\_\_ of the world's oceans, the Atlantic has by far the largest drainage area.  
A. the largest is not  
B. not the largest  
C. the largest not  
D. largest not the

## 第七章 从句简化练习参考答案

### 7.1

1. The student denied having cheated on the exam.
2. The president's being involved in the fraud is obvious. Or the president's involvement in the fraud is obvious.
3. I consider this a far-reaching event. Or I consider this event far-reaching.
4. His losing the game came as a surprise to everybody.
5. His working all night in the rain caused him to catch a bad cold.
6. The boy is worried about failing in the exam.
7. Trying sending her girlfriend flowers every day is the only way he can think of to gain her favor.
8. I remember his once offering to help us if we ever got into trouble.
9. You must tell me the truth. I insist on your telling the truth.
10. Nowhere in nature is aluminum found free, owing to its always being combined with other elements, most commonly with oxygen.
11. Children's objecting to their parents remarrying has become a prevalent social problem.
12. The teacher said that he wouldn't tolerate my arriving late every day.
13. The girl's being educated in an atmosphere of simple living was what her parents wished for.



## 7.2

14. The plumber told me how to fix the leak in the sink.
15. Please tell me where to meet you.
16. I don't know whether to believe him or not.
17. Sam is getting dressed to go to a party, but is having trouble deciding on what clothes to wear.
18. He found two shirts he liked, but he had trouble deciding which one to buy.
19. I was tongue-tied. I didn't what to say.
20. Going to the school dance is a lot of fun. But sometimes, deciding who to go with isn't easy.
21. A: I don't know what to buy for her birthday. Got any suggestions?  
B: How about a book?

## 7.3

22. The train approaching the station is from Shanghai.
23. The woman living next door is very friendly.
24. The people waiting for the bus in the rain are getting wet.
25. The scientists researching the causes of cancer are making progress.
26. Our school has a library built in 1900.
27. The car causing the accident drove off.
28. We lived in an apartment overlooking the sea.
29. Oceans continually lose by evaporation much of the river water constantly flowing into them.
30. Tornadoes(龙卷风) occur most often in the spring when

hot winds rising over flat land encounter heavy, cold air.

31. I don't think he is the best man to do the job.
32. He thought that it might not be the best time to ask his boss for a raise.
33. Trains leaving from this station take an hour to get to London.
34. Clint was the only person to survive the air crash.
35. He was the last man to leave the sinking ship.
36. Be sure to follow the instructions given at the top of the page.
37. The psychologists studying the nature of sleep have made important discoveries.
38. The conclusion presented in that book states that most of the automobiles produced by American industry have some defect.

#### 7.4

39. There is almost no end to the problems that face a head of state.
40. The photographs that were published in the newspaper were extraordinary.
41. Did you get the message that concerns the special meeting?
42. The woman who is waiting to see you has applied for a job here.
43. The plane that is flying overhead is traveling north.
44. The sunlight that comes through the window wakes me up early every morning.
45. Two-thirds of those that are arrested of car theft are un-

der twenty years of age.

46. The man who is serving at the counter is very helpful.
47. This job will suit students who want to work during the holidays.
48. There's someone who is knocking at the door.
49. Customers who complain about the service should see the manager.
50. Passengers who are traveling on planes shouldn't smoke.

## 7.5

51 - 55: DDCBC      56 - 60: ADDAC

## 7.6

61. While I was waiting for the bus, a brick fell on my head.  
(因主语不同,不能简化)
62. After turning to the corner, I saw a tile fall off the roof.
63. After I turned to the corner, a tile fell off the roof. (因  
主语不同,不能简化)
64. When I opened the door of the refrigerator, the smell  
was bad. (因主语不同,不能简化)
65. While I was watching TV last night, the telephone rang.  
(因主语不同,不能简化)
66. Before coming to class, I had a cup of coffee.
67. After having finished breakfast, he left the house and  
went to his office.
68. After having completed her shopping, she went home.
69. Alex hurt his back while chopping wood.
70. You should always read a contract before signing your

name.

71. While I was trying to get to sleep last night, a mosquito kept buzzing in my ear. (因主语不同,不能简化)

72. Since arriving here, we have made many new friends.

73. After looking at the map, we tried to find the right street.

### 7.7

74 - 75: AA      76 - 80: ADCAA      81 - 86: CCCBAB

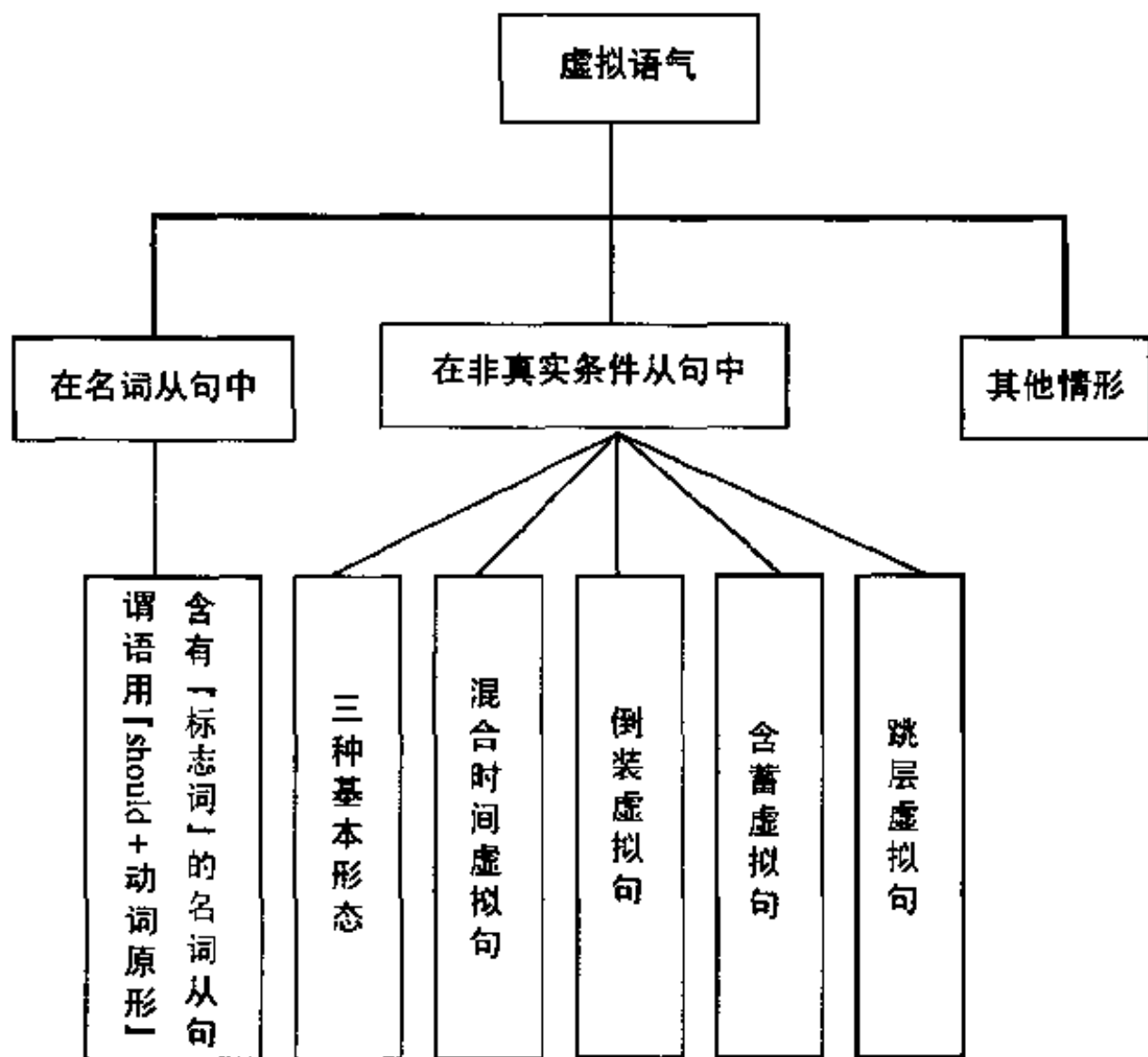
## 虚拟语气

---

语气(mood)是英文中一种动词形式,它用来表示说话者的意图和态度。在英文中语气可分为三种:陈述语气(indicative mood),祈使语气(imperative mood)和虚拟语气(subjunctive mood)。

在一些场合里,当说话者谈到自己的与实际情况相反的愿望时,主观想象某事有可能发生时,或建议、要求某事发生时,就需要借助于虚拟语气来表达他的这些心态。

我们在开始学习虚拟语气的时候,往往被其较为复杂的各种不同的谓语动词形式要求弄得晕头转向,混淆不清。为了帮大家理清思路,笔者采用如下的一个框图,只要紧扣此框图,各部分关系、前后联系就一目了然了。



## 第一节 非真实条件虚拟句

### 67. 非真实条件虚拟句

#### ► 1. 三种虚拟形式

非真实条件从句,顾名思义,它是用来描述说话人想象的、非真实的情景,这些情景通常是不可能发生的,与客观实际相反的,

或发生可能性极小,只表示说话者的一种主观愿望、假想和建议等等。它可以表示对现在、过去、将来的事实进行虚拟,主句和 If 从句中的谓语动词形式列表如下:

虚拟语气的三种基本形态:

表示虚拟的时间	IF 从句的谓语形式	主句谓语形式
现在	Did <i>or</i> were	Would (should, might, could) + do
过去	Had done <i>or</i> had been	Would (should, might, could) + have done (been)
将来	Were to (Should) + do	Would (should, might, could) + do

1) 与现在事实相反:

- a. If I **could** rearrange the alphabet, I' **d** put U and I together.
- b. If I **had** enough money, I **would run** a company of my own.
- c. If all difficulties **were** known at the outset of a long journey, most of us **would** never start out at all.
- d. I have often thought it **would be** a blessing if each human being **were stricken** blind and deaf for a few days at some time during his early adult life. Darkness **would** make him more appreciative of sight; silence **would** teach him the joys of sound. 我常常想:如果每一个人在他生活早期都要遭受几天的眼睛失明,耳朵失聪,那该是多么地幸福啊!黑暗会使他更加珍惜视觉;寂静无声能教会他欣赏声音的美妙。

If I **were** the president of a university I **should** establish a

compulsory course in "How to Use Your Eyes". The professor *would* try to show his pupils how they *could* add joy to their lives by really seeing what passes unnoticed before them. He *would* try to awake their dormant and sluggish faculties. 如果我是一名大学校长的话,我会开设一门“如何用眼”的必修课。教授应该让学生们知道因为他们能够真正看到眼前所发生的一切,这给他们的生活增添了多大的乐趣啊,他一定要唤醒学生们迟钝、麻木的感官功能。

Suppose you set your mind to work on the problem of how you *would* use your own eyes if you *had* only three more days to see. If with the oncoming darkness of the third night you *knew* that the sun *would* never rise for you again, how *would* you spend those three precious intervening days? What *would* you most want to let your gaze rest upon? 设想你在思考这样一个问题:假如你只有三天的视力,你该如何使用你的眼睛。假如在第三天晚上随着黑暗的降临,你知道明天太阳不再会为你升起,你将如何度过这宝贵的三天?你最想让你的目光凝视在什么上面?

注:Helen Keller: 海伦·凯勒(1880—1968),美国聋哑女作家、教育家。两岁时一场大病夺去了她的听力和视力。后受业于 Anne Sullivan Macy 夫人。1904 年以优异成绩毕业于剑桥拉德克里夫学院。她终生致力于聋哑和盲人的公共救助事业。

## 2) 与过去事实相反:

- a. If you *had invited* Wealth or Success, the other two of us *would 've stayed* out, but since you invited Love,



wherever he goes, we go with him. Wherever there is Love, there is also Wealth and Success! 你刚才若是邀请了“财富”或是“成功”两人,那我们其他两人就会留在外面。但是既然你已经邀请了“爱”,那么他去哪儿,我们也跟着去哪儿,因为只要有爱,就会有财富和成功!

- b. You *would have missed* the train if you *had not hurried*.
- c. If the flowers *had been planted* earlier, they *would have been* in bloom for the garden party last week.
- d. “Do you love me? —Yes. Do you really, really love me? —Yes.” It was a question that has been posed to many a lover. But Stephanie Powell had a special reason for asking her boyfriend if he loved her. Because Stephanie had just won \$7 million on the lottery and wanted to make sure of Wayne's devotion before she told him the good news. “If he *had known* about the win I *would never have known* whether it was me or the money he would want to stay with,” she said, “I don't know what I *would have done* if he *hadn't answered* yes. I love him and want to enjoy spending the money with him.”  
“你爱我吗? ——爱。你是不是真正地爱我? ——是的。”这样的问题许多爱人相互之间都问过,但是斯蒂法妮·鲍威尔问她的男朋友是否爱她时,却是因为有特别的原因。因为她刚刚中了 700 万美元的彩票。她想先证实韦恩对她的忠心,然后再告诉他这一喜讯。“如果他事先知道我获大奖,那我就再也没有机会知道他爱的是我还是钱,”她说道,“他当时如果没有回答说爱我,我真不知道该怎么办。我爱他,并想和他一起分享这笔巨款。”
- e. It would have been just as satisfactory if I \_\_\_\_\_ at home. I learned nothing in class.

- A. had stayed
- B. stayed
- C. was staying
- D. would stay

正确答案:A。

- f. If the whole operation \_\_\_\_\_ beforehand, a great deal of time and money would have been lost. (99-6 CET-6)
- A. was not planned
  - B. has not been planned
  - C. had not been planned
  - D. were not planned

正确答案:C。

### 3) 与将来事实相反:

- a. If I **should** win the lottery, I **would** buy a car.
- b. If he **were to** come here, how **would** you tell him about this?
- c. Sometimes I have thought it **would be** an excellent rule to live each day as if we **should** die tomorrow. Such an attitude **would** emphasize sharply the values of life. 我时常会想,如果我们能以明天就要告别这个世界的态度来度过每一天的话,那一定是极好的,因为这种心态会让每一个人珍视生命的意义。

## ► 2. 混合时间虚拟句

前面介绍的三种基本形态的虚拟语气,其 If 从句中谓语动词表示的动作与主句谓语动词表示的动作发生的时间是一致的,即同为现在、过去或将来。可是当二者动作发生的时间不一致时,主

句和从句各自的谓语形式要根据它们动作发生的时间按照上述原则作适当调整。常见的混合时间是：从句表示过去，主句表示现在。请看例句：

- a. If I *had not studied* English, I *would never be* here to teach you grammar today.

*had not studied* 是对过去的事实进行虚拟, *would never be* 是对现在的事实进行虚拟。

- b. If they *had invested* in that stock, they *might be* wealthy now.

- c. A: I don't like my mother-in-law.

B: Listen, don't you realize that you *couldn't have* your wife if it *hadn't been* for your mother-in-law?

A: Yes, that's why I don't like her.

- d. If I *had studied* English at school, I *could read* the English novel now.

- e. If he *had studied* English two years ago, he *might have* a chance of going abroad for further study now.

- f. Luciano Pavarotti said, "If I *hadn't listened* to my father, I *would* never be here today."

- g. W: What an accident! If you *had been* careful, things *would not be* as they are. (CET-6: 96.1)

M: What do you mean, it was my fault? If it were, surely I would take all responsibility for it.

### ► 3. 倒装虚拟句

当 If 条件句中有助动词 *should*, *had* 或 *were* 时, 则可以省去 *if*, 而将 *should*, *had* 或 *were* 置于句首, 从而构成倒装虚拟句, 意义不变。

- a. *Had he* not been promoted, he would never have remained with the company. = *If he had* not been promoted, he would never have remained with the company.
- b. *Should I* win the lottery, I would buy a car. = *If I should* win the lottery, I would buy a car.
- c. *Were he to* leave today, he would get there by Monday. = *If he were to* leave today, he would get there by Monday.
- d. *Were he to* tell us everything, we could try to solve his problem. = *If he were to* tell us everything, we could try to solve his problem.
- e. *Should you* change your mind, no one would blame you. = *If you should* change your mind, no one would blame you.
- f. *Had such a disaster* occurred, the damage would have been incalculable. = *If such a disaster had* occurred, the damage would have been incalculable.
- g. \_\_\_\_\_ to the doctor right away, he might be alive today.
- A. If he went  
B. Had he gone  
C. Were he gone  
D. Should he have gone

正确答案:B。

- h. \_\_\_\_\_ before we depart the day after tomorrow, we should have a wonderful dinner party. (97-1 CET-4)
- A. Had they arrived  
B. Were they arriving  
C. Would they arrive  
D. Were they to arrive

正确答案:D。

#### ► 4. 含蓄虚拟句

我们前面讨论的虚拟句,都含有虚拟的条件从句。含蓄虚拟句是指没有完整的条件从句,但在上下文隐含了虚拟条件的意味。隐含的条件意味可以通过下列方式表达:

1) 介词或介词短语:

- a. What would I have done *without you*? 当时若没有你,我会咋办呢? = What would I have done if I had not been with you?
- b. *In his position*, I would commit myself. = If I were in his position, I would commit myself.
- c. Anyone *in his position* would have done it like that.
- d. *Before liberation*, such floods would have caused terrible disaster. = If they had happened before liberation, such floods would have caused terrible disaster.
- e. *But for* their help, I would not have finished the task. = *If it had not been for* their help, I would not have finished the task.
- f. *But for* the sun, there could be no life on earth. = *If it were not for* the sun, there could be no life on earth.
- g. *But that* the doctor *arrived* on time that day (没有用虚拟), they would have been dead. = *If the doctor had not arrived* on time that day, they would have been dead.
- h. *But that* he needed money desperately, he would never have turned to his brother for help.
- i. \_\_\_\_\_ the fog, we should have reached the destination and accomplished the task.

A. But for

B. In case of

C. Because of

D. If not

正确答案:A。

j. Without your help, we \_\_\_\_\_ so much.

A. will not achieve

B. don't achieve

C. didn't achieve

D. would not have achieved

正确答案:D。

注意:but for 或 but that 意为“若不是…”。

(1) but for + 名词短语

(2) but that + 从句(谓语动词用陈述语气,(如 g, h 句))。

(3) 可表示对过去或现在、将来的虚拟。

(4) 表示对现在、将来的虚拟,but for 相当于 If it were not for...(如 e 句);表示对过去的虚拟,but for 相当于 If it had not been for...(如 d 句)。其中介词 for 不能省,如下句:

\_\_\_\_\_ the sun, there could be no life on earth.

A. Were it not for

B. If it were not

C. Were it not

D. But that

正确答案:A。

2) 分词短语:

a. *Given more time*, I would have been able to finish the test.

相当于:If I had been given more time, I would have been able to finish the test.

- b. This same thing, *happening in wartime*, would amount to disaster.

同样的事,如发生在战时,就会酿成大祸。

相当于: This same thing, if it happened in wartime, would amount to disaster.

3) 通过上下文来暗示条件:

- a. We *would have won* the game. (if something unexpected had not happened)

- b. A: Have you done anything online that you *wouldn't have done* in person?

B: Yes, obviously people are bolder and more outgoing on the Internet when they don't have to deal with the consequences of their actions.

A: 在网上你曾做过现实中你不会去做的事吗?

B: 做过呀。很显然,当人们在网上的时候,他们不须考虑他们的行为后果,也就比平时更大胆,更放得开!

- c. One day a bank ATM gave me an extra \$ 20, so I returned the money to a teller. I asked some of my professors and classmates in my moral-issues class what they *would have done*. Many conceded they *would have kept* the money, but my philosophy professor quipped, "I'd *have tried* the machine again!"

## ► 5. 跳层虚拟句

这是一类较为特殊的虚拟语气。这类句子一般分为两部分,两部分在语气上截然相反,一部分虚拟,另一部分不虚拟,而用的是陈述语气,用以陈述一事实。它们二者之间往往有 *but, or, or else, otherwise* 来连接。正是因为这种虚拟和不虚拟兼而有

之,一部分虚拟,一部分又跳出虚拟的圈子,故而得此名。

1) 虚拟句 + but + 陈述句

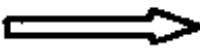
- a. He **would** put on weight, but he doesn't eat much. (不用 didn't) In other words, "**If he ate** much, he would put on weight."
- b. He could not have bought that limousine, but he inherited a big fortune from his father. In other words, "**If he had not inherited** a big fortune from his father, he could not have bought that limousine."
- c. I would have gone to visit him in the hospital, had it been at all possible, but I \_\_\_\_\_ fully occupied the whole of last week. (CET-4)
- A. were  
B. had been  
C. have been  
D. was

正确答案:D。

- d. Some women \_\_\_\_\_ a good salary in a job instead of staying home, but they decided not to work for the sake of the family. (CET-4 2000.01)
- A. must make  
B. should have made  
C. would make  
D. could have made


正确答案:D。

从上面例句,我们可以总结出这样一条规律:

- (1) 主语 + would do, but + 主语 + 一般现在时谓语形式  
 表示对现在事实的虚拟。

- (2) 主语 + would have done, but + 主语 + 一般过去时谓语



形式  表示对过去事实的虚拟。当然,句中的 *would* 根据不同情态可换成 *should*, *might* 或 *could*。我们也还看出这类跳层虚拟句关键标志词是 *but*, 随着 *but* 一转折,句子的语气也由虚拟变为不虚拟,即 *but* 将句子一分为二,*but* 前部分句子用虚拟语气,*but* 后部分句子用陈述语气。

2) 陈述句 + *or else* + 虚拟句

a. I didn't know the extent of his difficulty, or else I *would have promised* to help him.

b. I forget where I read the article, or I would show it to you now.

In other words, "If I remembered where I read the article, I would show it to you now."

c. Mary couldn't have received my letter, otherwise she *would have replied* before now.

d. He must have had an accident, or he \_\_\_\_\_ then. (90.1 CET-4)

A. would have been here

B. should be here

C. had to be here

D. would be there

正确答案:A。

e. We didn't know his telephone number, otherwise we \_\_\_\_\_ him. (95-6 CET-4)

A. would have telephoned

B. must have telephoned

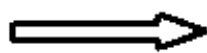
C. would telephone

D. had telephoned

正确答案:A。

这类跳层虚拟句和上述 but 连接的跳层虚拟句有所不同。此处是由 or, or else, otherwise 将句子一分为二,且前后分句的语气正好与上述虚拟句相反。我们看到,or (or else, otherwise)前部分句子用的是陈述语气,而后面的句子用的是虚拟语气。也就是:

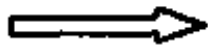
- (1) 主语 + 一般现在时谓语形式, or + 主语 + would do



表示对现在事实的虚拟。

- (2) 主语 + 一般过去时谓语形式, or + 主语 + would have

done



表示对过去事实的虚拟。

## 第二节 名词从句虚拟句

### 68. 名词从句虚拟句

虚拟语气除了在上述非真实条件从句中应用以外,在特定的名词从句中也需要用虚拟语气。这里所说的“特定的名词从句”,是指这样的名词从句中均要含有特定的标志词,这些标志词可用来表示愿望、建议、命令、请求、意志等语气。而且,与非真实条件虚拟句中主句和从句谓语动词形式完全不同的是,名词从句虚拟句谓语变化形式只有一条规律,那就是:名词从句虚拟句无论主句的谓语动词是何种形式,从句谓语形式均为:should + 动词原形,should 可以省去。这里特别提醒注意的是:不是用 would, 而是用 should。

先看下例:

I *suggest* that we should go tomorrow.

我建议我们明天走。

I *suggested* that we should go the next day.

我当时建议我们第二天走。

上例中的 suggest 即是我们所说的标志词,这里我们看到从句中的谓语时态(should go)并没有受主句谓语时态(suggest, suggested)的影响。

由此可知,要掌握名词从句虚拟句,最终归结为,记住相应的标志词即可,一旦主句中出现某一个标志词,我们就注意其从句谓语须用:(should) + do

下面为大家列出一些常见的标志词:

► 1. 在下列词的宾语从句中,从句谓语须用 should + do 的形式:

ask(要求,请求), advise, beg, command, demand, decide, deserve, desire, determine, insist, move(动议,提议), order, prefer, propose, require, recommend, request, suggest, urge 等。

- a. His father urged that he *study* medicine. (不用 studies)
- b. The Chinese Government and people have demanded that the US Government *shoulder* all the responsibilities for the incident, *apologize* to the Chinese side and *take* effective measures to prevent the recurrence of such incidents.

中国政府和人民要求美国政府对此事件必须承担全部责任,向中国道歉并采取有效措施防止类似事件再次发生。

- c. The instructions ask that we \_\_\_\_\_ more than three tablets once.
  - A. not to take
  - B. not take
  - C. won't take
  - D. wouldn't take

正确答案:B。

► 2. It is + 形容词或过去分词或特定的名词 + that... 的主语从句中。

1) 接这种结构的形容词有: astonishing, amazing, advisable, appropriate, crucial, desirable, essential, important, imperative, keen, necessary, natural, normal, odd, proper, preferable, strange, sorry, shocked, surprising, urgent, unusual, vital 等。这些形容词一般表示个人对事件的反应。

- a. It is natural that I should dwell upon his successes rather than upon his failures. (我宁愿强调他成功的地方, 而不愿突出他的失败之处, 这是自然的。)
- b. It is strange that he should not come here. (这里 should 只表明一种意外的语气, 可译为“竟然”)
- c. It's essential that people *be* psychologically able to resist the impact brought about by the transition from planned economy to market economy.
- d. It is important that the hotel receptionist \_\_\_\_\_ that guests are registered correctly. (2000 - 12 - CET - 4)  
 A. make sure  
 B. made sure  
 C. has made sure  
 D. must make sure

正确答案: A。

- e. It is quite natural that the customs of all national minorities \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. would be respected  
 B. were respected  
 C. be respected  
 D. had been respected

正确答案:C。

2) 接这种结构的过去分词有:decided,desired,demanded,ordered,request,required,recommended,suggested 等等。

- a. It is requested that all members *be* present at the meeting.
- b. It is politely requested by the hotel management that radios \_\_\_\_\_ after 11 o'clock at night. (96-1 CET-4)  
A. were not played  
B. not be played  
C. not to play  
D. did not play

正确答案:B。

3) 接这种结构的特定的名词有:advice,decision,desire,demand,suggestion,motion,pray,resolution,wish,preference,proposal,recommendation,requirement,idea,order 等。

It is my proposal that he *be* sent to study further abroad.

### ► 3. 在上述名词的表语从句和同位语从句中

- a. For my own part, it seems that the main requirement of an international language is that it *be* easily learned.
- b. The motion that the meeting *be* adjourned *was* adopted.
- c. Reports indicate that both sides have softened their respective positions for a possible settlement. The government has backed away from demands that the software giant *be broken up*, while Microsoft is now more willing to accept restrictions on how it manages its business.
- d. The suggestion that the mayor \_\_\_\_\_ the prizes was accepted by everyone. (CET-4-2000-6)

- A. would present
- B. present
- C. presents
- D. ought to present

正确答案:B。

最后需要说明的是,以上所罗列的标志词仅是一部分常见的,还有很多在此未尽详列,大家可以在今后的学习当中不断积累,自己总结。

### 第三节 其他虚拟句型

#### 69. 其他虚拟句型

在英文中,除了上述两大类虚拟句以外,还有其他一些句型表示的虚拟语气。它们无法列入上述任何一类,所以在此将它们一一单列,分别讨论。

##### ► 1. 在 wish 后的宾语从句中

这是大家非常熟悉的一个虚拟句型,它用来表示说话者的难以实现的或与事实违背的愿望,具有较强的感情色彩。可分别表示对现在、过去和将来情景的虚拟。

1) 对现状表示的愿望,从句谓语动词用过去时,意指从句谓语和主句谓语所表示的动作同时发生。

- a. I wish I *were* a little younger.
- b. I wish I *could* travel to the moon. (But I can't do that.)
- c. I wish I *knew* his address. (But I don't know his ad-

dress.)

- d. Whenever something goes wrong, I just push this little Reset button and restart. I wish my whole life *were* like that!
- e. Sometimes I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ in a different time and a different place. (CET-4 2000.01)
- A. be living  
B. were living  
C. would live  
D. would have lived

正确答案:B。

2) 对过去发生的事情表示遗憾、后悔,从句谓语动词用过去完成时(had done)或 would/could + 现在完成时,意指从句谓语动词所表示的动作发生在主句谓语所表示的动作之前。

- a. I wish I *had been* there.
- b. I wish I *had not attended* that party.
- c. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ with you to the concert last night.
- A. could have gone  
B. went  
C. could go  
D. have gone

正确答案:A。

3) 对将来发生的事情表示祝愿,从句谓语动词用 would/could + 动词原形,意指从句谓语动词所表示的动作可能发生在主句谓语所表示的动作之后。

- a. I wish he *could* explain what he means.
- b. I wish you *would* shut up.

注意:即使将 wish 改为 wished,上述例句谓语时态仍然不变。

## ► 2. 在 If only 感叹句中

If only 表示“但愿”、“要是…就好了”，它的用法和 wish 基本相同，可表示对现在、过去、将来的虚拟，只是比 wish 更具有强烈的感情色彩。

- a. If only he **had followed** your advice! (对过去虚拟)
  - b. If only I **were** taller. (对现在虚拟)
  - c. If only the rain **would stop**. (对将来虚拟)
  - d. Look at the terrible situation I am in! If only I \_\_\_\_\_  
your advice. (93.6 CET-4)
- A. follow
  - B. had followed
  - C. would follow
  - D. have followed

正确答案：B。

## ► 3. 在 as if / as though 从句中

- 1) 表示和现在事实相反或对现在情况有所怀疑，谓语用过去时。
- a. I really don't care for the way you're speaking to me. It seems as if you **were** my father.
- 2) 表示与过去事实相反，谓语用过去完成时。
- b. We have not seen each other for ten solid years, but when we encountered on the street that day, we were still so affectionate that it seemed as if not a single day **had gone** by.

**注意：**若从句中的情形是根据现在迹象作出推测，有可能发生，则用陈述语气。



- a. It is becoming dark. It looks as if it's *going* to rain.
- b. It seems as if he *has been* to America.

#### ► 4. 在 It is (high) time (that) 从句中

表示“该是…的时候了”，含有“晚了一点”的意思，从句中用过去时。

- a. Don't dawdle away your youth any more. It is time you *thought* about your future.
- b. It seems to be high time that this argument \_\_\_\_\_ put to an end.  
A. must be  
B. is  
C. were  
D. should be

正确答案：C。

- c. “You are very selfish. It's high time you \_\_\_\_\_ that you are not the most important person in the world,” Edgar said to his boss angrily. (99-1 CET-4)  
A. realized  
B. have realized  
C. realize  
D. should realize

正确答案：A。

在下列对话中体会这种“晚了一点”的含义。

Man: The school had the football field redone over the summer.

Woman: It's about time.

What does the woman imply?

- A. Summer is a good time for repairs.
- B. The field had been in poor shape.
- C. It's too hot to play football in the summer.
- D. The work on the football field is almost finished.

答案:B。

A: Let's get this desk in order.

B: Yes, it's about time we *cleared* it off.

Q: What can be inferred about the desk?

- A. It isn't placed right.
- B. There isn't enough time to clear it off.
- C. A new desk has been ordered to replace it.
- D. It has needed reorganizing for quite a while.

答案:D。

► 5. 在 would rather, would (just) as soon, would sooner, would prefer 等从句中

意指某人宁愿让另一个人做某事。其后的宾语从句的谓语应该用虚拟语气:(1)表示现在或将来要做的事,从句谓语须用一般过去时;(2)表示过去已经做的事,从句谓语则用过去完成时。

- a. I'd just as soon you *didn't speak* rudely to her.
- b. I'd as soon you *hadn't spoken* rudely to her.
- c. Don't come tomorrow. I'd rather you *came* next weekend. (也不用 would come)
- d. She says she'd rather he *left tomorrow* instead of today. (不用 would leave)
- e. You don't have to be in such a hurry. I would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ on business first. (9801 CET-4)  
A. would go

- B. will go
- C. went
- D. have gone

正确答案:C。

f. Wouldn't you rather your child \_\_\_\_\_ to bed early?  
(CET-4 2000.01)

- A. go
- B. went
- C. would go
- D. goes

正确答案:B。

需要提醒注意的是:would rather, would (just) as soon 等若不是接宾语从句,而是直接和动词连用,则要用动词原形,表示主语本身“宁愿要做某事”。

- a. I would rather *go* there tomorrow.
- b. He would rather *stay* indoors than go to the cinema tonight.
- c. He would rather *not stay* at home tonight. (否定要在动词前面加 not,而不是在 would 后面加 not)

第八章 虚拟语气综合练习

8.1 单项选择(非真实条件句)

1. If I \_\_\_\_\_ my own clothes, I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money.  
A. had made/would save  
B. could make/would save  
C. can make/would save  
D. could make/will save
2. Thank goodness, it's all over. I \_\_\_\_\_ it if I \_\_\_\_\_ it was going to take me so long.  
A. would never have done/had known  
B. would never do/knew  
C. would never have done/knew  
D. would never do/had known
3. He was fully occupied yesterday, otherwise he \_\_\_\_\_ to the sales conference.  
A. would come  
B. would have come  
C. came  
D. had come
4. Without computers, the world \_\_\_\_\_ what it is today.  
A. would be  
B. would not be  
C. won't be  
D. hadn't been
5. \_\_\_\_\_ I realized the consequences, I would never have contemplated getting involved.

- A. If
  - B. Had
  - C. When
  - D. Unless
6. Had Paul received six more votes in the last election, he \_\_\_\_\_ our chairman now.
- A. must have been
  - B. would have been
  - C. were
  - D. would be
7. He had to drive fast yesterday; otherwise he \_\_\_\_\_ his plane.
- A. had missed
  - B. would be missing
  - C. would have missed
  - D. would miss
8. \_\_\_\_\_ the sense of someone watching them, Ralph would have shouted at his wife.
- A. Despite
  - B. Except
  - C. But for
  - D. Except for
9. Any man in his position \_\_\_\_\_ like that.
- A. has done
  - B. would have done
  - C. does
  - D. would be done
10. We didn't know his address; otherwise we \_\_\_\_\_ an invitation to him.

- A. would have sent
  - B. must have sent
  - C. had sent
  - D. would send
11. Sometimes I have thought it would be an excellent rule to live each day as if we \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
- A. should die
  - B. are to die
  - C. were dying
  - D. must die
12. The boy would have died, \_\_\_\_\_ on him without delay.
- A. if the doctor didn't operate
  - B. if the doctor wouldn't operate
  - C. would the doctor not operate
  - D. had the doctor not operated
13. If Greek civilization \_\_\_\_\_ all of Europe, English wouldn't contain so many Greek words.
- A. hadn't influenced
  - B. doesn't influence
  - C. hasn't influenced
  - D. didn't influence
14. If television \_\_\_\_\_ a thousand years ago, would nations be significantly more homogeneous than they are now?
- A. were invented
  - B. was invented
  - C. has been invented
  - D. had been invented

## 8.2 单项选择(名词从句虚拟句)

15. At the conference, it has been decided that she \_\_\_\_\_ an opportunity to go abroad as a sales representative.  
A. is going to have  
B. have  
C. will have  
D. has
16. It is extremely urgent that they \_\_\_\_\_ from the mountain before dark.  
A. must rescue  
B. be rescued  
C. will be rescued  
D. shall be rescued
17. The women's magazines, deploring the statistics, urged that courses on marriage, and marriage counselors, \_\_\_\_\_ in the high schools.  
A. installed  
B. be installed  
C. have been installed  
D. installing
18. I intend to move that our committee \_\_\_\_\_ Tom as chairman, and I hope that you will second my motion.  
A. will appoint  
B. appoint  
C. appoints  
D. has appointed
19. The dean approved of the requirement that every student \_\_\_\_\_ on social investigation after summer vacation.

- A. reports
  - B. report
  - C. reported
  - D. reporting
20. I second Mr. Wang's motion that a special committee \_\_\_\_\_ to examine the problem.
- A. be established
  - B. established
  - C. was to establish
  - D. was established

### 8.3 单项选择(其他虚拟句型)

21. "I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ the play last night."  
"It's a shame that I \_\_\_\_\_ ."
- A. had attended / didn't
  - B. attended / didn't
  - C. had attended / hadn't
  - D. could attend / haven't
22. The picture exhibition bored me to death. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ to it.
- A. have not gone
  - B. had not gone
  - C. didn't go
  - D. should not have gone
23. It was a lovely day yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ I had been at the seaside then.
- A. think
  - B. wish
  - C. hope



- D. expect
24. It's about time I \_\_\_\_\_ something about home-decorating.
- A. learn  
B. learned  
C. have learned  
D. should learn
25. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ with you to the concert last night.
- A. could have gone  
B. went  
C. could go  
D. have gone
26. If only we \_\_\_\_\_ a phone! I'm tired of queuing outside the public phone box.
- A. had  
B. had had  
C. would have  
D. have had
27. The manager would rather his daughter \_\_\_\_\_ in the same office.
- A. had not worked  
B. not no work  
C. does not work  
D. did not work
28. He would rather \_\_\_\_\_ than worked last night.
- A. have slept  
B. has slept  
C. sleep  
D. slept

29. Frankly, I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ anything about it for the time being as it has not yet been decided.
- A. did
  - B. didn't do
  - C. didn't
  - D. don't
30. She would rather that you \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
- A. not arrive
  - B. do not arrive
  - C. had not arrived
  - D. did not arrive

#### 8.4 单项选择(综合练习)

31. In the United States a law requires that a warning label \_\_\_\_\_ on cigarette packages.
- A. ought to be printed
  - B. needs to be printed
  - C. must be printed
  - D. should be printed
32. It is high time that the third world countries \_\_\_\_\_ a more active part in economic affairs of the world.
- A. play
  - B. were playing
  - C. played
  - D. had played
33. If the United States had built more homes for people in 1995, the housing problems now in some parts of this country \_\_\_\_\_ so serious.
- A. wouldn't be

- B. will not have been  
C. wouldn't have been  
D. would have not been
34. At the last conference, the motion that the chairman of the International Olympic Games \_\_\_\_\_ was defeated.  
A. would be dismissed  
B. be dismissed  
C. were dismissed  
D. was dismissed
35. If the climate had been more favorable, the crops \_\_\_\_\_ still better.  
A. would have grown  
B. would be growing  
C. would be grown  
D. will grow
36. These facts suggested that women \_\_\_\_\_ in opportunity for physical exercise by cultural taboos.  
A. should be limited  
B. had been limited  
C. be limited  
D. have been limited
37. I would very much like to have gone to see the movie, but I \_\_\_\_\_ a ticket.  
A. shall not have  
B. haven't had  
C. don't have  
D. didn't have
38. The result has turned still worse than it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. would otherwise have been

- B. would be otherwise  
C. has otherwise been  
D. had otherwise been
39. The stubborn young man did not follow the advice that he \_\_\_\_\_ on his behavior since he refused to believe he had done anything wrong.  
A. reflect  
B. had reflected  
C. would reflect  
D. must reflect
40. \_\_\_\_\_ for your help, we'd never have been able to get over the difficulties.  
A. Had it not been  
B. Had it not  
C. If it were not  
D. If we had not been
41. The storm delayed us. \_\_\_\_\_ the storm we would have been in time.  
A. For  
B. Were it not for  
C. Had it not been for  
D. But
42. The party \_\_\_\_\_ at my house, but the central heating broke down, and we had to have it at John's place.  
A. would be  
B. would have been  
C. was to be  
D. were
43. We are all for your proposal that the discussion \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. be put off  
B. was put off  
C. should put off  
D. is to put off
44. He turned down her proposal that she \_\_\_\_\_ at the conference.  
A. should offer  
B. offer  
E. offered  
C. offering
45. What do you think of Tom's proposal that \_\_\_\_\_ put on the play at tonight's English evening?  
A. we will not  
B. we not  
C. we hadn't  
D. we wouldn't
46. The school board listened quickly as John read the demands that his followers \_\_\_\_\_ for.  
A. be demonstrating  
B. demonstrate  
C. had been demonstrating  
D. have demonstrated
47. It was suggested at the meeting that effective measures \_\_\_\_\_ to solve the problem.  
A. be taken  
B. were taken  
C. must be taken  
D. take
48. It is desirable that the doctor \_\_\_\_\_ there at the mo-

- ment.
- A. be
  - B. would be
  - C. will be
  - D. must be
49. I propose that a woman \_\_\_\_\_ deputy to the district congress.
- A. would be nominated
  - B. was nominated
  - C. is nominated
  - D. be nominated
50. Her mother insists that she \_\_\_\_\_ skating with her brother.
- A. went
  - B. go
  - C. goes
  - D. will go
51. I move that he \_\_\_\_\_ discharged for his serious mistake.
- A. be to be
  - B. was to be
  - C. is to be
  - D. would be
52. These national parks are very important for preserving many animals, who would \_\_\_\_\_ run the risk of becoming extinct.
- A. instead
  - B. nevertheless
  - C. therefore

- D. otherwise
53. We went to work on foot yesterday, though we \_\_\_\_\_ by bus.
- A. could have gone  
B. must have gone  
C. ought to have gone  
D. had better to
54. One of the requirements for a fire is that the material \_\_\_\_\_ to its burning temperature.
- A. is heated  
B. will be heated  
C. be heated  
D. would be heated
55. It is advisable that a general announcement \_\_\_\_\_ to the teaching staff.
- A. will be made  
B. should make  
C. be made  
D. have been made
56. Abraham Lincoln insisted that \_\_\_\_\_ not just on mere opinion but on moral purpose.
- A. to base democracy  
B. for democracy to be based  
C. democracy be based  
D. whenever democracy is based
57. Jean Wagner's most enduring contribution to the study of Afro-American poetry is his insistence that it \_\_\_\_\_ in a religious, as well as worldly, frame of reference.
- A. is to be analyzed

- B. has been analyzed  
C. be analyzed  
D. should have been analyzed
58. Mr. Smith didn't phone me last night, but he \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. might have to  
B. would do  
C. had to  
D. should have
59. A safety analysis \_\_\_\_\_ the target as a potential danger.  
Unfortunately, it was never done.  
A. would identify  
B. will identify  
C. would have identified  
D. will have identified
60. The millions of calculations involved, had they been done  
by hand, \_\_\_\_\_ all practical value by the time they were  
finished.  
A. could lose  
B. would have lost  
C. might lose  
D. ought to have lost
61. \_\_\_\_\_ the timely investment from the general public,  
our company would not be so thriving as it is.  
A. Had it not been for  
B. Were it not for  
C. Had it not been  
D. Should it not be
62. The board deemed it urgent that these files \_\_\_\_\_ right  
away.



- A. had to be printed
  - B. should have been printed
  - C. must be printed
  - D. should be printed
63. If you \_\_\_\_\_ Jerry until recently, you'd think the photograph on the right was strange.
- A. shouldn't contact
  - B. weren't to contact
  - C. didn't contact
  - D. hadn't contacted
64. It is essential that these application forms \_\_\_\_\_ back as early as possible.
- A. must be sent
  - B. will be sent
  - C. are sent
  - D. be sent
65. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ make any comment on the issue for the time being.
- A. don't
  - B. wouldn't
  - C. didn't
  - D. shouldn't
66. Had he worked harder, he \_\_\_\_\_ the exams.
- A. must have got through
  - B. would have got through
  - C. would get through
  - D. could get through
67. I don't think it advisable that Tim \_\_\_\_\_ to the job since he has no experience.

- A. is assigned  
B. will be assigned  
C. be assigned  
D. has been assigned
68. If only the committee \_\_\_\_\_ the regulations and put them into effect as soon as possible.  
A. approve  
B. will approve  
C. can approve  
D. would approve
69. It is vital that enough money \_\_\_\_\_ to fund the project.  
A. be collected  
B. is collected  
C. must be collected  
D. can be collected
70. You \_\_\_\_\_ her in her office last Friday; she's been out of town for two weeks.  
A. needn't have seen  
B. must have seen  
C. might have seen  
D. can't have seen
71. Jean doesn't want to work right away because she thinks that if she \_\_\_\_\_ a job she probably wouldn't be able to see her friends very often.  
A. has to get  
B. were to get  
C. had  
D. could have got
72. The local peasants gave the soldiers clothes and food.

- without which they \_\_\_\_\_ of hunger and cold.
- A. would dead
  - B. will die
  - C. would be dead
  - D. would have died
73. It is recommended that the project \_\_\_\_\_ until all the preparations have been made.
- A. is not started
  - B. will not be started
  - C. not be started
  - D. is not to be started
74. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ longer this morning, but I had to get up and come to class.
- A. could have slept
  - B. slept
  - C. might sleep
  - D. have slept
75. We desire that the tour leader \_\_\_\_\_ us immediately of any change in plans.
- A. inform
  - B. informs
  - C. informed
  - D. had informed
76. He suggested \_\_\_\_\_ to tomorrow's exhibition together.
- A. us to go
  - B. we went
  - C. we shall go
  - D. we go
77. John's score on the test is the highest in the class; he

- \_\_\_\_\_ hard last weekend.
- A. should have studied
  - B. must have studied
  - C. would have studied
  - D. should study
78. The room is in a terrible mess; it \_\_\_\_\_ cleaned.
- A. can't have been
  - B. shouldn't have been
  - C. mustn't have been
  - D. wouldn't have been
79. Sally can't have been in Paris, or \_\_\_\_\_
- A. I met
  - B. I'd met
  - C. I'll meet him
  - D. I'd have met
80. Mary's score on the test is the highest in her class; she \_\_\_\_\_ have studied very hard.
- A. may
  - B. should
  - C. must
  - D. ought to
81. Research findings show we spend about two hours dreaming every night, no matter what we \_\_\_\_\_ during the day.
- A. should have done
  - B. would have done
  - C. may have done
  - D. must have done
82. To be frank, I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ in the case.

- A. not to be involved  
B. not involved  
C. will no be involved  
D. were not involved
83. It seems to be high time that this argument \_\_\_\_\_ put to an end.  
A. must be     B. is     C. were     D. should be
84. The dentist said that my tooth went worse and I \_\_\_\_\_ it pulled out.  
A. should have had  
B. might have had  
C. needn't have had  
D. mustn't have had
85. The business is risky. But \_\_\_\_\_, we would be rich.  
A. should we succeed  
B. would we succeed  
C. might we succeed  
D. could we succeed
86. If we hadn't been interrupted the day before yesterday, we \_\_\_\_\_ the job.  
A. would do  
B. would not have done  
C. had done  
D. would have done
87. It is decided that no smoking \_\_\_\_\_ in public places from now on.  
A. be allowed  
B. is allowed  
C. will be allowed

- D. should have been allowed
88. The Reform club proposed that wages \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. would be raised  
B. were raised  
C. would have been raised  
D. be raised
89. Through worldly loss he came to an insight into spiritual truth to which he might \_\_\_\_\_ have been a stranger.  
A. no more  
B. no less  
C. neither  
D. otherwise
90. \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday, I would have asked him not to do that.  
A. Had he come  
B. Provided he came  
C. If he came  
D. Has he come
91. It is highly necessary that the rocket \_\_\_\_\_ until all the preparations have been made.  
A. is not to be launched  
B. not be launched  
C. were not launched  
D. is not to be launched
92. I had intended to the airport yesterday, in which case I \_\_\_\_\_ the guests.  
A. might meet  
B. would meet  
C. might have met

D. had met

93. It is generally thought to be necessary to a college student that he \_\_\_\_\_ at least on foreign language.

A. know B. knows C. knew D. would know

### 8.5 辨别改错

94. I'd rather you would go by train, because I can't bear

A

B

the idea of your being in an airplane in such bad weather.

C

D

95. When Edison died, it was proposed that the American

A

people turned off all power in their homes, streets, and

B

C

factories for several minutes in honor of this great man.

D

96. Your math instructor would have been happy to give you

A

a makeup examination had you gone and explained that

B

C

your parents had been ill at the time.

D

97. I don't think it advisable that he will be assigned to the

A

B

job since he has no experience whatsoever.

C

D

98. The law I am referring to requires that everyone who

A

B

owns a car has accident insurance.

C

D

第八章 虚拟语气练习答案

8.1-8.4

- |              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1-5: BABBB   | 6-10: DCCBA  | 11-15: ADADB |
| 16-20: BBBBA | 21-25: ABBBA | 26-30: ADABC |
| 31-35: DCABB | 36-40: BDAAA | 41-45: CBACB |
| 46-50: CAADB | 51-55: ADACC | 56-60: CCDCB |
| 61-65: ADDDC | 66-70: BCDAD | 71-75: CDCAA |
| 76-80: DBADC | 81-85: CDCAA | 86-90: DADDA |
| 91-93: BCA   |              |              |

8.5

- 94. A/went
- 95. B/turn off
- 96. D/were
- 97. B/(should) be assigned
- 98. D/have



## 倒 装

### 70. 部分倒装

倒装在英文中是一种较常见的语法现象。从结构上来讲,倒装句可分为:全部倒装和部分倒装。

全部倒装:将整个谓语部分全部放在主语之前。

部分倒装:只将谓语的一部分(如助动词或系动词)放在主语前面,其余部分仍在主语之后。

- a. Now comes your turn. (全部倒装)
- b. Could you show me that book? (部分倒装)

#### ► 1. 句首有否定词或否定短语时,句子要部分倒装。

- 1) 常见的否定词有:never, hardly, scarcely, little, seldom, not, not until, rarely, no sooner...than, nowhere, etc.
- a. *So scary are* those three words, words spoken in passion, spoken in a whisper. At one precise moment they feel so true so right. Some use them casually in their everyday

chatter, but I find them sacred. I can speak them only when I'm certain. I will not use them in vain. They've been spoken to me before under the shroud of darkness beneath a warm touch. But *never before did* they ring true. *Never before did* they grab my heart and caress it with the magic of a pure soul. *Never before have* they been sincere enough to have my lips echo their syllables in the most meaningful sentence I could ever speak. Those three words are only for you.

- b. *Nowhere* in the world *can you* find a man who is more foolish than John.
- c. *Nowhere* in the world *can you* find a man who loves you so much!
- d. *No sooner had I* taken a bath than the bell rang.
- e. *Not* a word *did he* say at the meeting.
- f. *Never* before *have I* heard such a story.
- g. *Never have I* heard American music played better in a foreign land. 我在外国从来没有听到过演奏得这么好的美国音乐。(尼克松讲话)
- h. *Not* until he came back *did I* leave. (注意:主句中主谓结构部分倒装)
- i. *Not* only *did we* lose all our money, but we also came close to losing our lives.
- j. Nowhere but in Europe \_\_\_\_\_ the results so clearly, which really have surprised us all.
  - A. we have seen
  - B. we saw
  - C. we must have seen
  - D. have we seen

正确答案:D。

2) 常见的否定短语有: in no way, in no case, at no time, by no means, in no sense, on no account, under no circumstances。 这些否定短语常放在句首,表示强调,译为“绝不…”。大家一定要记住它们规定的介词搭配。

- a. *In no way do I* blame you for what happened.
- b. On no account \_\_\_\_\_ rudeness from his employees.
  - A. the manager will tolerate
  - B. the manager will not tolerate
  - C. the manager tolerates
  - D. will the manager tolerate

正确答案:D。

- c. A thermometer put in the water tells us the temperature of water, but \_\_\_\_\_ does it show the amount of heat the water contains.
  - A. on no time
  - B. in no way
  - C. in any way
  - D. in no account

正确答案:B。

3) 如果否定词不是修饰整个句子,而只是限定句子主语,则句子不用倒装。

- a. Hardly anyone has seen a man who eats mice/cats.
- b. Not only I but also he has been there.
- c. To me he is not dead at all. *Hardly a day* goes by that I don't think of him or speak of him.
- d. Scarcely a sound came from among the crowd. 人群里没有发出一点儿声音。

- 2. “So + 形容词或副词”及“to the extent/degree”放在句首，表示程度，句子要倒装。

- a. To such an extent did his health deteriorate that he was forced to retire.  
b. So diligently does he work that he often forgets to eat and sleep.  
c. To such an extent \_\_\_\_\_ his empty speech that some of us began to doze.  
A. did he go on with  
B. he would go on with  
C. he went on with  
D. he did go on with

正确答案:A。

- 3. 在含有 were, had, should 的虚拟语气中，省去 if，须倒装。（详见“虚拟语气”相关内容）

- 4. as 引导的让步状语从句须倒装。（详见“让步状语从句”相关内容）

- a. Look as I would up and down, I could see no men at all.  
b. Change your mind as you will, you won't gain his support.

- 5. “only + 状语”置于句首。

1) only + 表示时间或方式的短语置于句首。

- a. **Only then** did she realize she was wrong.

- b. **Only by working hard** can you achieve your goal.
- c. **Only by** having an independent ego **can women** fully control their own lives. 只有心怀一个独立的自我,女人才完全主宰自己的生活。
- d. Only under special circumstances \_\_\_\_\_ to take make-up tests. (9706 CET - 4)
- A. are freshmen permitted
- B. freshmen are permitted
- C. permitted are freshmen
- D. are permitted freshmen

正确答案:A。

2) only 若加各类状语从句置于句首,则注意是主句中的主谓须倒装,而不是从句中的主谓倒装,这一点与 not until 同。

- a. Only when he had failed three times **did he** turn to me for advice.
- b. **Only** when a man's life comes to its end in prosperity **dare we** pronounce him happy. 只有当一个人的生命在辉煌中结束时,我们才能断言他是幸福的。
- c. An intimate relationship does not banish loneliness. **Only when** we are comfortable with who we are and can function independently in a healthy way, **can we truly function** within a relationship. Two halves do not make a whole when it comes to a healthy relationship: it takes two wholes.

3) 若 only 修饰的是句子主语,而非状语时,句子不用倒装。

- a. Only she knew how to deal with this problem.

## ► 6. 代词 so, neither, nor, no more 置于句首

- a. I can't speak French, nor can he.

- b. He had no money, nor did he know anyone he could borrow from.
- c. A: Meal price has gone up.  
B: So has tuition.
- d. She never laughed, \_\_\_\_\_ lose her temper. (90.1 CET-4)
- A. or she ever did  
B. nor did she ever  
C. or did she ever  
D. nor she ever did

正确答案: B。

此外,要注意:这种结构也可用来表达对别人讲的情况有同感,此时不用倒装。

A: It's a very nice day.

B: **So it is.** (可不是嘛!)

### ► 7. 让步状语从句的倒装句: be it... (详见“让步状语从句”相关内容)

- a. The business of each day, be it selling goods or shipping them, went quite smoothly.
- b. Be he ever so tired, he continued to go farther.

## 71. 全部倒装

### ► 1. 以介词开头的地点状语置于句首

- a. From the window came sound of music.
- b. On the ground lies a man whose leg is broken.
- c. By his side sat his faithful dog.

- d. Just remember, in the winter *far beneath the bitter snow*,  
*lies* the seed that with the sun's love in the spring, be-  
comes the rose.

► 2. 副词 out, in, along, then, now, up, down, away, here,  
there 等位于句首时

---

- a. In came the teacher, books under arm.  
b. Just then along came Tom.  
c. When Greek meets Greek, *then comes* the tug of war.  
(两雄相遇,其斗必烈。)  
d. There goes the bell.  
e. Down came the hammer and out flew the sparks. (铁锤  
一下,火星四射)  
f. As a gift, Zeus gave Pandora a box, but told her never to  
open it. However, as soon as he was out of sight she took  
off the lid, and *out swarmed all the troubles* of the world.  
Only Hope was left in the box, stuck under the lid.

► 3. such 位于句首

---

- a. Such will be my future dreams.  
b. Such is my whole story.  
c. Such were his dreams as a boy.

► 4. 表语置于句首

---

- a. *Blessed is* the person who is too busy to worry in the day-  
time and too sleepy to worry at night.  
b. *Gone are* the days when we had no food to eat.

- c. *Gone are the days* when you had to get dressed up to make an impression. On the net, you can dress down, slouch in your seat and disguise yourself as a prince charming.
- d. Every one of us has in him a continent of undiscovered character. *Blessed is* he who acts the Columbus to his own soul. (每个人都有未经发现的品性,能够像哥伦布那样探索自己灵魂的新大陆的人,是有福气的。)



## 第九章 倒装句练习

### 9.1 单项选择

1. Not until 1931 \_\_\_\_\_ the official anthem of the United States.  
A. "The Star-spangled Banner" did become  
B. when "The Star-spangled Banner" became  
C. did "The Star-spangled Banner" become  
D. became "The Star-spangled Banner"
2. \_\_\_\_\_ the 18th century did man realize that the whole of the brain was involved in the workings of the mind.  
A. Not until  
B. It was not until  
C. Until  
D. It was until
3. \_\_\_\_\_ that the pilot couldn't fly through it.  
A. So the storm was severe  
B. So severe was the storm  
C. The storm so severe was  
D. Such was the storm severe
4. \_\_\_\_\_ dwell upon the joy of that reunion.  
A. Little need I  
B. Little I need  
C. Little did I need  
D. Little do I need
5. On no account \_\_\_\_\_ borrow money from friends, and still less \_\_\_\_\_ dependent on the favors of rich relatives.

- A. I would... I would be  
B. would I... I would be  
C. would I... would I be  
D. I would... would I be
6. Only with a complete grasp of all the cues of social intercourse \_\_\_\_\_ disappear.  
A. this train will  
B. will this strain  
C. this strain should  
D. should this strain
7. In the eastern part of New Jersey \_\_\_\_\_, a major shipping and manufacturing center.  
A. where the city of Elizabeth lies  
B. where lies the city of Elizabeth  
C. lies the city of Elizabeth  
D. the city of Elizabeth lies
8. At the South Pole \_\_\_\_\_, the coldest and most desolate region on Earth.  
A. Antarctica lies where  
B. where Antarctica lies  
C. Antarctica lies and  
D. lies Antarctica
9. Not until linoleum was invented in 1860 \_\_\_\_\_ hardwearing, easy-to-clean flooring.  
A. any house did have  
B. did any house have  
C. house had any  
D. any house had
10. \_\_\_\_\_ divorce ourselves from the masses of the people.

- A. In no time we should  
 B. In no time should we  
 C. At no time we should  
 D. At no time should we
11. "Not until science became prominent \_\_\_\_\_ be abolished", some people argue.  
 A. did slavery come to  
 B. slavery to  
 C. had slavery come to  
 D. that slavery came to
12. Not only \_\_\_\_\_ much bigger than any planet, but unlike the planets, it consists completely of gaseous material.  
 A. the sun is  
 B. the sun, which is  
 C. is the sun  
 D. that the sun
13. Not only \_\_\_\_\_ as a cooked dish the world over, but it is also used as the base of many other foods, condiments, and even beverages.  
 A. eating rice  
 B. rice is eaten  
 C. people eat rice  
 D. is rice eaten
14. Among the first plants to grow on the land regions of the Earth \_\_\_\_\_, which in prehistoric times grew to immense size.  
 A. were horsetail rushes  
 B. horsetail rushes  
 C. horsetail rushes were

- D. and horsetail rushes
15. Not only \_\_\_\_\_ to determine the depth of the ocean floor, but it is also used to locate oil.
- A. to use seismology
  - B. is seismology used
  - C. seismology is used
  - D. using seismology
16. The air inside a house or office building often has higher concentrations of contaminants \_\_\_\_\_ heavily polluted outside air.
- A. than does
  - B. more
  - C. as some that are
  - D. like of
17. \_\_\_\_\_ to speak when the audience interrupted him
- A. Hardly had he begun
  - B. No sooner had he begun
  - C. Not until he began
  - D. Scarcely did he begin
18. Only recently \_\_\_\_\_ possible to separate the components of fragrant substances and to determine their chemical composition.
- A. it becomes
  - B. having become
  - C. has it become
  - D. which becomes
19. Although the Earth's chemical composition had been studied for years, only toward the end of the nineteenth century \_\_\_\_\_ as a discipline in its own right.

- A. when geochemistry was recognized
  - B. was geochemistry recognized
  - C. then recognized as geochemistry
  - D. as geochemistry was recognized
20. Not only \_\_\_\_\_ all the positive charge of an atom, it is also the site of the weight of every atom.
- A. does the nucleus hold
  - B. the nucleus holding
  - C. the nucleus does hold
  - D. holds the nucleus
21. \_\_\_\_\_ devised to lessen the drudgery of washing clothes that the origin of the washing machine is unclear.
- A. Were the inventions so numerous
  - B. The inventions so numerous
  - C. So numerous were the inventions
  - D. The inventions that were so numerous
22. Coinciding with the development of jazz in New Orleans in the 1920's \_\_\_\_\_ in blues music.
- A. was one of the greatest periods
  - B. one of the greatest periods
  - C. was of the greatest periods
  - D. the greatest periods
23. Beneath the streets of a modern city \_\_\_\_\_ of walls, columns, cables, pipes, and tunnels required to satisfy the needs of its inhabitants
- A. where exists the network
  - B. the existing network
  - C. the network's existence
  - D. exists the network

24. \_\_\_\_\_ advance and retreat in their eternal rhythms, but the surface of the sea itself is never at rest.  
A. Not only when the tides do  
B. As the tides not only do  
C. Not only do the tides  
D. Do the tides not only
25. There is a real possibility that these animals could be frightened, \_\_\_\_\_ a sudden loud noise.  
A. being there  
B. should there be  
C. there was  
D. there having been
26. Only under special circumstances \_\_\_\_\_ to take make-up tests.  
A. are freshmen permitted  
B. freshmen are permitted  
C. permitted are freshmen  
D. are permitted freshmen
27. She never laughed, \_\_\_\_\_ lose her temper.  
A. or she ever did  
B. nor did she ever  
C. or did she ever  
D. nor she ever did
28. No sooner had we reached the top of the hill \_\_\_\_\_ we all sat down to rest.  
A. when  
B. then  
C. than  
D. until

29. \_\_\_\_\_ got on the train when it started to move.  
 A. I rarely had  
 B. Scarcely had I  
 C. No sooner I had  
 D. No sooner had I
30. On no account \_\_\_\_\_ rudeness from his employees.  
 A. the manager will tolerate  
 B. the manager will not tolerate  
 C. the manager tolerates  
 D. will the manager tolerate
31. Nowhere but in Europe \_\_\_\_\_ the results so clearly,  
 which really have surprised us all.  
 A. we have seen  
 B. we saw  
 C. we must have seen  
 D. have we seen
32. To such a extent \_\_\_\_\_ his empty speech that some of  
 us began to doze.  
 A. did he go on with  
 B. he would go on with  
 C. he went on with  
 D. he did go on with
33. Without the friction between their feet and the ground,  
 people would \_\_\_\_\_ be able to walk.  
 A. in no time  
 B. in no way  
 C. by all means  
 D. on any account
34. \_\_\_\_\_ the surface of metal, but also weakens it.

- A. Not only does rust corrode
- B. Rust, which not only corrodes
- C. Not only rust corrodes
- D. Rust not only corrodes



## 第九章 倒装句练习参考答案

### 9.1

1-5: CABAC      6-10: BCDBD      11-15: ACDAB  
16-20: AACBA      21-25: CADCB      26-30: ABCBD  
31-34: DABD

[ G e n e r a l   I n f o r m a t i o n ]

书名 = 英语语法新思维高级教程：驾驭语法

作者 =

页数 = 4 3 6

S S 号 = 0

出版日期 =

V s s 号 = 9 4 5 6 3 7 3 1

封面页  
书名页  
版权页  
前言页  
目录页  
第一章

## 名词从句

1. 名词从句的本质：三种句子充当四种成分
2. 主语从句
3. 宾语从句
4. 表语从句
5. 同位语从句

## 第二章

## 定语从句

6. 全面理解“先行词”
7. 关系词
8. 常见关系代词
9. As 的用法
10. What 用法
11. Than 作关系代词的用法（考研常考题）
12. But 的用法
13. When 的用法
14. Where 的用法
15. Why 的用法
16. 根据定语从句中的线索来判断介词
17. 根据先行词来判断介词
18. 表示所属关系或部分与整体关系时用介词 of
19. in which to do 结构
20. That 在定语从句与名词从句中
21. Which 在定语从句与名词从句中
22. 各种复杂的定语从句

## 第三章

## 状语从句

23. 状语从句本质
24. 时间状语从句
25. 地点状语从句
26. 原因状语从句
27. 目的状语从句
28. 结果状语从句
29. so 和 such 的用法区别
30. 条件状语从句
31. 让步状语从句
32. 比较状语从句
33. 方式状语从句

## 第四章

## 动词不定式

34. 非谓语动词概述
35. 句型一：It + to do sth（作主语）
36. 句型二：动词 + to do（作宾语）
37. 句型三：动词 + sb to do sth（作宾语补足语）

	38 . 句型四：名词 + t o d o s t h ( 作定语 )
	39 . 句型五：形容词 + t o d o s t h
	40 . 不定式作状语
	41 . 用作独立成分
	42 . 不定式逻辑主语
	43 . 不定式的时态
	44 . 不定式的语态
	45 . 不带 t o 的不定式
	46 . 分裂不定式
第五章	动名词
	47 . 动名词作主语
	48 . 动名词作宾语
	49 . 动名词的复合结构
	50 . 动名词时态语态
	51 . T h e r e b e 的动名词及不定式形式
第六章	分词
	52 . 现在分词的意义
	53 . 过去分词的意义
	54 . 三种表示被动的结构 ( 考试重点 )
	55 . 关于分词短语作状语时的逻辑主语问题
	56 . 分词短语作状语在句中的不同意义
	57 . 带有连词或介词的分词短语
	58 . 分词的完成式
	59 . 现在分词与动名词的区别
	60 . 动名词复合结构与现在分词短语的区别
	61 . 分词作补足语
	62 . 现在分词构成的复合形容词
	63 . 过去分词构成的复合形容词
第七章	从句的简化
	64 . 名词从句的简化
	65 . 定语从句的简化
	66 . 状语从句的简化
第八章	虚拟语气
	67 . 非真实条件虚拟句
	68 . 名词从句虚拟句
	69 . 其他虚拟句型
第九章	倒装
	70 . 部分倒装
	71 . 全部倒装
附录页	